

A NEW

1507/1412

HISTORY

O F

ENGLAND,

B Y

QUESTION and ANSWER.

Extra&ed from the most celebrated

English HISTORIANS;

PARTICULARLY

M. de RAPIN THORRAS.

Written principally for the

INSTRUCTION of YOUTH.

The SECOND EDITION, corrected by the Author.

L O N D O N:

Printed for T. ASTLEY, at the *Rose* in St. Paul's
Church-Yard. 1735.

HISTORY



ENGLAND

BY

JOHN H. P. MOTTISTON

Author of 'The History of the British Museum'

English History

Illustrated by

M. J. P. MOTTISTON

With a preface by the

Director of the

British Museum

F

LONDON

Printed for T. Agnew and Sons, Limited, 1, Abchurch Lane, London, E.C. 4

1907



P R E F A C E.

othing has been a greater surprize to me, than that among the various books which have been written for the instruction of our youth, no one should have attempted to draw up an epitome of English history, in our tongue, for their use. The Greek and Roman histories indeed contain a series of the noblest events that ever happen'd ; but still they are not so much our concern, as the transactions that relate to our own country. The birth or death of a sovereign prince, will create joy, or throw a damp on the minds of the greatest part of his subjects ; but these passions are much stronger, when they are rais'd from circumstances that happen among their nearest relations. The comparison will hold between the Roman and English histories ; the former indeed raises our admiration more, when we con-

sider the origin of that state, its progress and decay; but the latter, tho' it exhibits less noble incidents, does nevertheless affect us in a much stronger manner.

However, my wonder why such an abstract had never been drawn up by an English writer, abated very much, when I consider'd the wrong methods that almost universally prevail in the education of our children; of which so many excellent things have been already said, and to so little purpose, that I shall wave adding any thing farther on that head.

Next to the histories of the Greeks and Romans, there is, I believe, none which affords a greater variety of memorable events than that of England; especially when we consider the surprizing revolutions therein, which are hardly to be parallel'd in any other annals.

The foundation on which I built, is a little French work intituled Methode facile pour apprendre l'histoire d'Angleterre, written for the use of the duke d'Elbeuf, and afterwards retouch'd by Mr. Boyer, who also added the reign of Queen Anne in French. This piece, after perusing a few pages of it, I had some thoughts of

P R E F A C E.

V

of barely translating into English; but advancing farther, I found, that notwithstanding the method of it was excellent, the author had nevertheless misrepresented a great number of facts, besides a multitude of errors in the body of the whole; so that I found myself oblig'd, the two last reigns excepted, to enlarge, contract, or correct it, in almost every page; and to do this with greater accuracy, I made use of Mr. Rapin Thoyras's history of England, and one or two more; all which, I have compared with the above-mention'd epitome; and by their assistance, have brought it to the perfection it is now in.

However, I am far from imagining it is as compleat as it might have been, had some abler hand set about it; but finding that no one gave any such notice to the publick, I presum'd an indifferent history of this kind were better than none at all.

The stile might have been more elegant and flowing, but I chose purposely to make it plain and easy, as it would thereby be better adapted to the capacities of those for whom it was more immediately design'd.

In the whole, I have endeavour'd to state every thing with the utmost impartiality, without being attack'd to any party; and as I have advanc'd nothing but from good authorities, if the reader should meet with any passage that clashes with his particular sentiments, I must intreat him not to be too severe in his censure, since my sole aim was his improvement in history.

In this edition, I have again compared my work with the most celebrated English historians, by which I have been enabled to correct many errors that slip't me in the first impression.





A N E W
M E T H O D

For Studying the
History of *E N G L A N D*.

Q



H A T country is that you call *Great Britain*?

A. The island which comprehends the two kingdoms of *England* and *Scotland*.

Q How long has it been called by that name?

A. Ever since the beginning of the reign of King *James I.* who, in order to put an end to the dispute that arose about the royal title, *viz.* Whether *England* or *Scotland* should be named first, assumed that of King of *Great Britain*; and revived a name that had been laid aside ever since the beginning of the ninth century.

Q What is the shape of *Great Britain*?

A. Triangular; the angles whereof are the *Lizard-Point* to the west; that of *Forsland*, or *Sandwich* near *Dover*, on the east; and that of *Straitby-head* to the north.

Q What are the Seas that surround it?

A. The channel to the south, which separates it from *France*; to the east the *German* ocean, lying between *England*, *Flanders*, *Denmark*, and *Germany*; the *North*, or *Frozen Sea* to the north; and the *Irish* Sea to the west.

Q Into how many parts is *Great Britain* divided?

A. Two, *viz.* *England* and *Scotland*; the latter lying to the north, and the former to the south.

Q What is the true extent of *Great Britain*?

A. It is in length about 630 *English* Miles, or thereabouts; from the *Lizard-Point* in *Cornwall* to that of *Straitby-*



(2)

Stratby head, in Scotland: but its breadth is very unequal, the greatest is of 290 Miles.

Q. How is *England* bounded?

A. By the rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the mountains of *Cbiviott*, which divide it from *Scotland*; the rest of it is bounded by the Ocean.

Q. Who were the ancient inhabitants thereof?

A. The *Britons*, whether *Gauls* or *Trojans*, and the *English*.

Q. What nations have had the sovereignty of it?

A. The *Britons*, the *Romans*, the *English*, the *Danes*, and the *Normans*.

Q. How many Kings have reigned therein?

A. 'Tis impossible to give the exact number of those who reigned before *Anno* 800, when *Egbert* began the monarchy, the history whereof we are now writing.

Q. Was not *England* divided into seven kingdoms before *Egbert*?

A. Yes, and it was call'd the *Saxon* Heptarchy, which were the kingdoms, 1. of *Kent*; 2. of *South-Sex*, or of the *South-Saxons*; 3. *West-Sex*, or of the *West-Saxons*; 4. *East-Sex*, or of the *East-Saxons*; 5. *East-Angles*; 6. the *North-Humbers*; 7. of *Mercia*.

Q. Have all its Kings from *Egbert* sprung from the same Family?

A. No; the Family that now sits upon the throne is the seventh.

Q. Pray give me the names of the families, and the number of Kings that have sprung from them?

A. The first was that of the *Saxon* or *English* Kings, whereof there were seventeen; the second, that of the *Danes*, of which were only three Kings; the third, which is that of the *Normans*, gave the same number; and that of *Champagne*, which is the fourth, whereof there is one only.

Q. Who are the rest?

A. We must first observe, that that of the *Plantagenets* or of the House of *Anjou*, which is the fifth, is divided into three branches; viz. that of the *Plantagenets*, whence eight kings have sprung; those of *York* and of *Lancaster*, from each whereof three monarchs have sprung.

Q.

Q. Tell me the names of the rest?

A. The *Tudors* have given three kings and two queens; the *Stuarts* four kings and two queens; and from that of *Brunswick*, which is now upon the throne, two monarchs only have sprung.

Of the ROYAL FAMILY.

Q. **W**HAT kind of government is that of *England*?

A. A monarchy; the authority whereof is nevertheless limited by the Parliament. The crown is hereditary, and the women are allowed to succeed to it. The Parliament has no authority unless convened by the king, and that he approves of its resolutions.

Q. In what does the sovereign authority of the kings of *England* immediately consist?

A. They alone have the power to declare peace, or war; to make leagues, treaties, or to conclude a truce; to receive, or send out ambassadors; to coin money, but not to fix the current value of it, which is done by consent of Parliament only; to allow or repeal grants and privileges; to dispose of the several governments in their dominions, and all employments both of sea and land. In a word, all commissions, whether for life, or a certain limited time, are absolutely in their disposal.

Q. Does their power extend no farther?

A. They are heirs in the last resort in their kingdom, that is, all estates where no heir appears, revert or escheat to the King.

Q. Pray continue.

A. They had the custody of the goods and estates of all minors that hold of the crown; they may apply the revenues thereof to their own private use, except what is necessary for the minor's maintenance, till such time as he is one and twenty, when he is at age; and then they cannot marry without their consent: but this has been since taken away by act of Parliament.

Q. Have the Kings of *England* any authority over the Parliament?

A.

A. They alone have the power of summoning, proroguing, and dissolving it; they may refuse to give the royal assent, without being obliged to declare the reason of their refusal; and the whole force and power of their statutes flows from them, and cannot pass into a law without their express consent.

Q. Is justice administered in the King of *England's* name?

A. In all parts of *Great-Britain*, he is the supreme Judge, or Lord Chief Justice. He fills up all the offices of judicature; has liberty to preside in all tribunals and in all cases, that of high-treason excepted, in which he himself is plaintiff.

Q. Has he no power in the Church?

A. He is the head of the Church of *England*, which is entirely subordinate to him, he being, as it were, its patriarch. He nominates to bishopricks, and several other benefices. He claims tithes and annats, and has liberty to assemble his clergy in convocation.

Q. In what manner is the King of *England* waited upon?

A. In a kneeling posture, and no one is allow'd to be cover'd before him.

Q. Who is the second person in the kingdom?

A. The Queen consort.

Q. Does she enjoy any peculiar privileges?

A. She may make whatever purchases she thinks proper in the kingdom, and dispose of them without an act of Parliament for her naturalization. She may remove her causes to whatever court she pleases; and if, when a widow, she should marry again, she would have all honours paid her as to a Queen, tho' she was to marry a private gentleman.

Q. What title is given to the eldest son?

A. He is call'd Prince of *Wales*, and is always heir apparent to the crown; and when he is fifteen, his subjects pay him homage.

Q. Is it many years since the Kings sons have enjoy'd this title?

A. *Edward I.* (to compute, as the *English* do, from the *Norman* princes) won this principality in 1278, from

Leoline

Leoline the last prince of *Wales*; and he wholly abolish'd the authority of these princes by taking prisoner *David*, *Leoline's* brother, whom he beheaded in 1283.

Q. Which of the Kings of *England's* sons first had the title of Prince of *Wales*?

A. *Edward II.* He was born at *Caernarvan* in that principality; the King having obliged his consort to go and lie in there; in order that they might be the better pleased with the prince he was going to set over them.

Q. Has the Prince of *Wales* any settled revenue?

A. He has about twenty thousand pounds sterling arising from the mines in his principality and the dukedom of *Cornwall*, which is also annexed to them, and in virtue whereof he is, by law, at age the moment of his birth. His present majesty, when prince had 100000*l.* per annum settled upon him by act of Parliament.

Q. At what age is he sovereign of *Wales*?

A. At twenty-four; till which time it used to be governed by commissioners chosen from the body of the nobility and clergy.

Q. Have the rest of the King's children any titles appropriated to them?

A. No, the King bestows whatever titles he pleases upon them. We are only to observe, that the title of *Royal-Highness* is given them, and that whoever kisses their hands must do it kneeling; that the King's natural children have the precedence of all peers, and yield it to none but the legitimate.

Q. Has the King any fixed revenues?

A. The parliament passed an act in the year 1660, in favour of King *Charles II.* by which it was ordained, that henceforward the King's yearly revenues should be fixed at twelve hundred thousand pounds sterling which sum added to certain other taxes, produces his majesty a yearly revenue of fifteen hundred thousand pounds sterling which amounts to about twenty millions of *French* money. The ordinary charge of the government, or civil list, as it is now called, was, upon her late majesty's accession to the crown, settled by parliament at 700000*l.* per annum, upon the best funds in *England*.

Of the PARLIAMENT.

Q. WHAT is the Parliament of *England*?

A. The general assembly of the states of the kingdom.

Q. By whom was it instituted?

A. This is not known; for to refer the institution of it to *Henry I.* would be ridiculous, it being certainly of greater antiquity, at least the house of Lords; but it appears not to have been divided into two houses till 1260, under the reign of *Henry III.* to whom some authors ascribe the institution of it, tho' without the least foundation.

Q. Whence was it originally derived?

A. From the parliaments, assemblies, or diets of the northern nations, whence the *Anglo-Saxons* came. It was not indeed held so frequently under the first *British* Kings, as under the *Plantagenets*, when it began to make itself formidable.

Q. By what steps has it risen to that height of power it has sometimes assum'd?

A. This was owing either to the avarice, or profuseness of some Kings; their adherence to their favourites; or the ambition of some particular persons.

Q. In what manner did the avarice and lavishness of the Kings give authority to the Parliament?

A. As the yearly revenues fixed by the state fell short of the sums expended, the Kings were obliged to impose taxes; and the monies arising from hence having been employ'd to different uses, or lavish'd on favourites; all such great men as did not share in them, oppos'd them; and after several insurrections they assum'd to themselves a power, of not suffering the King to levy any other taxes, than such as had been granted him by the states of the kingdom.

Q. When did the Parliament assume this authority?

A. Under the reign of King *John*, and they confirm'd it to themselves under that of his Son, who, as he was always in want of money, used to convene them

too often. 'Twas in these assemblies only that they came to such resolutions, as almost destroy'd the kingly authority.

Q. Did not the King oppose their measures?

A. It was not in his power to do it, he having been scarce able to preserve his crown. Besides, the methods which he and all weak Princes have employ'd to maintain their authority, have serv'd only to destroy it entirely.

Q. In what manner?

A. When ever the defenders of liberty had fix'd too narrow bounds to the royal authority, and had caused their resolutions to be pass'd into a law by Parliament, the King no sooner got the upper-hand, than he would convene such a Parliament as was either faithful, or had been brib'd by him in order to repeal the acts made by the former. In this manner the Parliament, whether restive or humble, had always the upper-hand under weak Kings, whereof there have been many in *England*.

Q. Was the Parliament as powerful under the renown'd Kings?

A. It did no more than barely put their commands in execution, and had only the power of approving their designs. *Edward* the III. *Henry* the IV, V, VII, and VIII. and *Queen Elizabeth* made the Parliament subservient to their wills; but it has not been so pliable since.

Q. Why so?

A. Because it is generally composed of two parties, whereof the first, who are so many creatures of the court, seldom fail of being balanced by the defenders of the liberty and privileges of their country. 'Tis this mutual opposition that occasion'd the death of *Charles* the I. and all the revolutions that have happen'd since that time.

Q. Are these the only steps by which the Parliament has risen to this exalted power?

A. We must likewise add, the great love some Kings have had for favourites, and the hatred which the *English* bear to all those who are in favour; and as favourites

rites have never had any power but under weak Kings, it was no difficult matter for the great men of the Kingdom to give the government whatever form they thought proper: but the ambition of some private men has carried matters to still greater lengths.

Q. What methods did they employ?

A. Some Princes, whose aim was to seize upon the crown, sought out methods to give some colour to their usurpation; this they often were not able to effect, but by laying several crimes to the charge of the reigning Monarch; and as it was necessary to have some power which might take cognizance of these crimes, they have made choice of the Parliament, which by the undoubted right it has of regulating the succession to the crown, had by this means frequently pronounc'd the fate of these Monarchs.

Q. What examples have we had of this?

A. The Parliament called *Edward* the II. to account, by order of his Wife and his eldest Son; and with their consent depos'd him, and placed *Edward* the III. on the throne. The divisions between the houses of *York* and *Lancaster* furnish us with a great number of examples of this kind.

Q. Pray relate some of these.

A. *Edward* IV. caused *Henry* the VI. to be declared unworthy of wearing the crown; had him depos'd, and condemn'd to perpetual imprisonment. *Henry* having gain'd all the advantages over his enemy he could possibly have wish'd, caused him to be condemn'd to be beheaded, as guilty of high-treason.

Q. Who are entitled to have a seat in Parliament?

A. The bishops, the nobility, and the third estate, who together compose two-houses; viz. that of *Peers*, call'd the higher-house; and that of the *Commons*, call'd the lower-house.

Q. Who are those that have seats in the house of peers?

A. The King, the princes of the blood, the bishops, dukes, marquisses, earls, viscounts, and barons, or lords, whose number, including the 16 peers that serve for *Scotland*, generally amounts to one hundred and forty lords; and by a statute made 30 Car. II. the lords that

that conform not to the protestant religion, no longer sit, or have suffrage in the house of lords.

Q. Who are those that compose the house of commons?

A. The two deputies, or representatives, of each of the forty counties, into which *England* is divided; those of the twenty six cities, each of which have a right to send two, except the city of *London*, which sends four; the representatives of the universities of *Oxford* and *Cambridge*; the barons of the Cinque-ports, and 330 Burgesses of 168 towns in *England*, each of which send one or two, according to their privileges; 24 from the towns of the principality of *Wales*; and lastly the 45 from *Scotland*; making in all about 566 members.

Q. Whence are these representatives elected?

A. Most commonly from among the sons or relations of the nobility, or gentry; and the counties, in order to do themselves more honour, often make choice of the sons of dukes, marquisses, earls and lords, when they are passed their one and twentieth year, which is the age appointed by the laws.

Q. In what does the authority of the Parliament consist?

A. The house of lords is the chief court of judicature in the kingdom; and gives a final sentence in appeals from all other courts; this is the court of the peers: it takes cognizance of all affairs that belong to them, or of any crimes of which they may be accused; 'tis the business of this court to judge them, and is the soul of the house of commons; it takes cognizance of affairs relating to the government; but its statutes are of no force unless they pass in the house of commons, and receive the royal assent.

Q. What authority has the house of commons?

A. They inquire into the conduct and behaviour of all private persons, of what dignity soever; they search out and impeach criminals, cause them to be arrested unless they are peers, and prosecute them; but the greatest prerogative they enjoy, is the power of granting or refusing such subsidies as the King may demand.

Q. Where is the Parliament held?

A. Where-ever the King pleases; but it has for these many years been held in *Westminster*.

Of the CLERGY.

Q. IN what does the clergy of *England* consist?

A. In two archbishops, *viz.* of *Canterbury* and *York*, 24 bishops, 26 deans of chapters, 60 archdeacons, 544 prebends, many deans, and upwards of 9700 rectors of Parishes, each of whom have the care of a church and sometimes more, and a great number of curates under them; all whom are the episcopal clergy.

Q. What authority has the archbishop of *Canterbury*?

A. He is primate of all *England*, and crowns the King. Since the reformation he grants dispensations, confirms elections, may appoint suffragans to such bishops as are sick, or disabled from performing their several functions; summons a convocation when he has receiv'd the King's command for that purpose, where he sits as president and is the last who declares his opinion. He is the first peer of the realm, and yields the precedency to none but the royal family.

Q. What authority have the bishops?

A. They confer orders, and confirm; give ministers leave to preach, and perform the rest of the pastoral functions in their several dioceses.

Q. Which is the most considerable sect in *England*?

A. That of the Presbyterians.

Q. What do you mean by Presbyterians?

A. Those who neither allow of bishops, church ceremonies, or ecclesiastical ornaments.

Q. Name me the other sects?

A. Those of the Independents, the Anabaptists, the Quakers; to whom we may add the Socinians, Philadelphians, and many more; not to mention the *Roman* Catholics, who are never molested, provided they are obedient to the Government.

Of the NOBILITY.

Q. IN what manner is the nobility of *England* distinguished?

A. In the nobility, properly so called; and the gentry.

Q. Whom do you comprehend under the title of the nobility?

A. Dukes, marquisses, earls, viscounts and barons.

Q. Is the title of duke of any antiquity among the *English*?

A. We are told that it was first bestow'd in the year 1338. *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, call'd the black prince, of whom mention will be made in the battles of *Creci* and *Poitiers*, receiv'd that title from the King his father, and was the first that bore it.

Q. Have the peers any high privileges?

A. They have entrance, suffrage, and seats in Parliament; nor can be arrested, unless in cases of high-treason: their suits are immediately try'd in the house of peers; and they cannot be try'd for any crime whatsoever, but by commissioners chosen from the said house.

Q. Are these all their privileges?

A. When they are sent for to Parliament, they have liberty to hunt in the King's grounds, either in going to, or returning from it. Those who any ways injure them, are punish'd by the statute of *scandalum magnatum*. Neither the sheriff or his officers are allow'd to search their houses, without the King's order first obtain'd, sign'd by six privy counsellors: in a word, they have a great many other privileges.

Q. Are not the dukes distinguish'd by any peculiar habit?

A. They wear a ducal cap and a mantle of state, which they are allow'd to appear in where ever the King is not present.

Q. Do the other peers wear ceremonial mantles?

A. Yes, but not to mention that they differ from those of dukes, a marquiss may not wear his ceremonial mantle in presence of a duke, an earl in presence of a marquiss, a viscount in presence of an earl, and a baron in presence of a viscount, except in the Parliament-house, or at the coronation of a King or Queen.

Q. In what other particulars do they still differ?

A. In these, *viz.* that all the younger sons of dukes and marquisses are lords; an earl's eldest son bears the same title; but his younger sons, and those of viscounts, and all the male children of barons, are no more than private gentlemen.

Q. Whom do you understand by the gentry?

A. Baronets, knights and esquires, who are all gentlemen, simply so call'd, and make part of the commons.

Of the Third Estate.

Q. OF whom is the third estate compos'd?

A. Of the gentry or lower nobility, the gentlemen of the long robe; of yeomen; of free-holders, merchants, trades-men, keepers of publick-houses, and peasants.

Of the English in general.

Q. PRAY describe the persons of the *English*?

A. They are for the most part handsome, grey ey'd, fair complexion'd, have light hair, and are well shap'd. Their women are beautiful, and have greater privileges than those of other countries.

Q. What have you to say to their qualities?

A. They have naturally good sense, and succeed in whatever they undertake; are great sticklers for religion, and still more so in maintaining their privileges; they run all hazards to get them restor'd whenever they are depriv'd of them.

Q. You have not taken any notice of their inclinations with respect to war?

A. That they are a brave people, is not to be disputed; they are seldom seen to flinch, but are not able to support very great fatigues, being naturally soft and little inclin'd to labour; they are born with a patience, which is often of more advantage to them than a warm temper.

Q. Are the *English* great traders?

A. Yes; particularly since King *Henry* the VIIth's time. This Monarch considering in what manner he might best employ his subjects, in order to leave them no leisure to meditate on fresh insurrections, open'd to them a trade by sea, which they have since carried on with great success, as well as sincerity and honour.

Of England in general.

Q. **I**S the air of *England* healthy?

A. It is so healthy, that we often see some of its natives enjoy a perfect health till 100 years of age; however, it does not seem to be so, it being very thick, and so clogg'd with mists and fogs, especially at *London*, that people can sometimes scarce see one another in the streets.

Q. Are fogs very frequent?

A. So frequent, that tis almost a general rule in *London*, that if the morning is not foggy, it certainly rains in the afternoon; and in case a fog rises in the morning, one is almost sure of having a fine afternoon: and this rule holds good for most parts of *England*.

Q. We may therefore suppose this country to be very cold?

A. Less than one would imagine it to be, for the warm winds that blow from the western ocean, soften very much the severity of the cold.

Q. What are the qualities of the soil?

A. It is fat and fruitful, yielding every thing in great abundance that is necessary for life; and if grapes could ripen in it, it would certainly be one of the best countries

tries in the world. It abounds in game; the sea and the rivers furnish great quantities of fish; the meadows are cover'd with oxen, cows and sheep; their milk, butter, cheese, beef and mutton are exceeding good.

Q. In what do the principal revenues of the country consist?

A. In the traffick of their wool, which is very fine, and their cloth, which for its beauty and goodness, is preferr'd to silk.

Q. Have they a great number of tame animals?

A. I have already observ'd that the meadows were cover'd with great and small cattle, and shall add, that they have horses for war, for hunting and the plough, which are as high-mettled as those of *Spain*, are much longer-winded, but very tender-hoof'd. They have some asses, but few mules: a great number of mastiffs, which are more esteem'd than those of any other part of *Europe*.

Q. Is it true that there are no wolves in *England*?

A. They were formerly so numerous, that the Kings of *England* had laid a tribute of a hundred wolves heads on the Inhabitants of *Wales*; and it was very usual for a person condemn'd to die, to have his punishment chang'd to a mulct of a certain number of heads of these animals; by which means they were all kill'd, inso-much that there was not so much as one left alive.

Q. Are there any mines in it?

A. *Strabo* tells us that it had golden mines, and *Cicero* was of the same opinion, but there are none found in these days: there are a few silver mines in the principality of *Wales*; there are also a great number of lead and iron mines, and 'tis well known that *Cornwall* furnishes the best tin in the world; and that coal-pits, particularly at *New-castle*, and quarries of stone are found in several places.

Q. Name me the chief rivers of *England*.

A. The *Thames*, the *Severn*, and the *Humber*.

SAXON KINGS.

EGBERT, *the First Monarch of England.*

From the Year 801, to 838.

*Emperors of the West.**Popes. Emperors of the East. and Kings of France.*

LEO III.	795	IRENE	Empress	797	CHARLEMAINE	E. 800
STEPHEN V.	816	NICEPHORUS I.	802	and K. of France	768	
PASCAL I.	817	MICHAEL I.	811	LEWIS I.	814	
EUGEN. II.	824	LEO V.	813			
VALENT. I.	827	MICHAEL II.	820			
GREG. IV.	827	THEOPHILUS I.	829			

2. **W**HO was the first Monarch of *England*?

A. Egbert the last King of the West-Saxons.

2. Whose son was he?

A. Of Ingild, brother to Ina, King of the West-Saxons.

His distinguish'd merit rais'd the jealousy of several persons in the Court of King *Britbrick*, whose heir he was; and having been condemn'd to lose his head, he fled, and by that means escaped the fury of his enemies.

2. To whom did he fly?

A. To Offa, King of the Mercians, and afterwards to the court of Charlemain King of France.

2. What reception did he meet with from *Charlemain*?

A. The King, charm'd with his fine qualities, treated him with great distinction, and made him accompany him

him in his journey to *Frankfort*, and afterwards to *Rome*.

Q. Was any thing remarkable done at this time at *Rome*?

A. Pope *Leo III.* set the imperial crown on *Charlemain's* head.

Q. When did this happen?

A. On Christmas-day in *St. Peter's* church, the year of our Lord 801, a little after the death of *Brithrick*.

Q. What did *Egbert*, when he heard of his Death?

A. Having taken leave of *Charlemain*, who presented him with the sword which he himself wore, he set out with all speed for the kingdom of the *West Saxons*.

Q. Was he favourably receiv'd by the people thereof?

A. With incredible joy; this was in the year 801. The gentleness of his administration increased their affection to him, and by their assistance he conquer'd the *Britons* who inhabited the coasts of *Cornwal* and *Wales*. He defeated *Witgalph* king of the *Mercians*, conquer'd his kingdom, and afterwards turning his Arms against the kings of *Kent*, of *East-Angles*, and of *Essex*, he made himself master of their territories.

Q. what did he after he had united these kingdoms to his own, and obliged the king of the *North-Humbers* to become his vassal?

A. He gave orders that all the country which was subject to him, should thenceforward be call'd *England*; so that he is consider'd as the first Sovereign of all the *Anglo-Saxon* nation.

Q. Was the remaining part of his reign peaceable?

A. Yes, except that towards the conclusion of it he was molested by the *Danes*, who in 830 made a descent in *England*, and defeated the Army which he sent against them.

Q. Did they long enjoy the fruits of their victory?

A. No, for two years after *Egbert* routed them entirely; drove them back to their ships, and out of all parts of *England*, and they never return'd back to it during his reign.

Q. What is the character of this Prince?

A. He had all the qualities requisite in a Conqueror.

Q. How long time did he reign?

A. Thirty seven years and seven months. He died in 838, and was interr'd at *Winchester*.

ETHELWOLF, II^d King of England.

From 838, to 858.

*Emperors of the
West, and Kings*

Popes.

Emperors of the East. of France.

GREGORY IV. 827	THEOPH. I. 829	LEWIS. 814
SERGIUS II. 844	MICH. III. 842	LOTHARIUS 840
LEO II. 847		LEWIS II. 855
BENEDICT III. 855		

Q. WHO succeeded Egbert?

A. *Ethelwolf*, his son, who begun his reign in 838.

Q. Had Egbert no other children?

A. He doubtless had had another since *Ethelwolf* was educated in the view of being made an ecclesiastick.

Q. What account do historians give of him?

A. That he was a pious, wise, valiant and clement Prince; a lover of peace, and very zealous for religion.

Q. What remarkable transactions happen'd under his reign?

A. The *Danes* enter'd *England*, took and plunder'd *London*; but he march'd against them, cut most of them to pieces in 851; however, they returned back two years after.

Q. What success had the *Danes* in this second descent?

A. *Ethelwolf* defeated them a second time, gain'd two such complete victories over them, the one at sea, the other at land, that not one of them escap'd to acquaint his countrymen with this ill news.

Q. To whom did he ascribe these glorious advantages?

A. To the God of armies; and to give a more illustrious testimony of his gratitude, he, from a principle of

de-

devotion, made a voyage to *Rome* with his son, where he met with a gracious reception from Pope *Leo IV.*

Q. What did he in favour of the Holy-See?

A. He made his kingdom tributary to it, and oblig'd each family in his dominions to pay a shilling annually; and this is what in *England* is call'd *Peter-pence.*

Q. Are we not told that he caus'd his son to sign the instrument by which he bound himself to pay this tribute?

A. Yes; and likewise thirty barons his attendants, which tribute was paid till *Henry VIII.* put a stop to it.

Q. Did *Ethelwolf* enjoy a long reign?

A. He reign'd 21 years, and died in 857.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Twice; first with *Osburgb* an *English* princess; and afterwards with *Judith* daughter of *Charles* the Bald, whom he caus'd to be crown'd with the consent of the three estates of this kingdom.

Q. What was the motive of his convening them?

A. In order to give a sanction to this ceremony, and to ratify the instrument by which he had oblig'd them to pay a tribute to the Holy See.

Q. Had he any children?

A. Not by his last consort, and *N. Giles* assures us that their marriage was not consummated; but he had four sons by his first Queen, who all succeeded him, and a fifth, viz. *Edmund*, whom he had caus'd to be crown'd King of the *East-Angles*, and who was kill'd by the *Danes*, the 20th of *November*, Anno 870.

ETHEL-

ETHELBALD and ETHELBERT, jointly making the III^d King of England.

From 858 to 860.

	<i>Emp. of the West</i>
<i>Popes.</i>	<i>Emp. of the East. and K. of France.</i>
BENEDICT III. 855	MICHAEL III. 842 LEWIS II. 855
NICHOLAS I. 858	

2. **W**hich of *Ethelwolf's* sons succeeded him?

A. *Ethelbald* his eldest son, who had rebelled against his father (during the journey he made to *Rome*) in order to make himself king in his absence.

2. When did he begin his reign?

A. In the year 858.

2. What character do you give of this Prince?

A. That he had neither the piety or valour of his father, or of his grandfather; by which means he drew upon himself the hatred of his subjects.

2. Did he perform any remarkable action?

A. No, for reigning but two years, he had no opportunity to signalize himself; he left no issue behind him.

ETHELBERT, IVth King of England.

From 860 to 866.

	<i>Emp. of the West.</i>
<i>Popes.</i>	<i>Emp. of the East. and K. of France.</i>
NICHOLAS I. 858	MICHAEL III. 842 LEWIS II. 855

2. **E***thelbald* leaving no issue, who succeeded him?

A. His brother *Ethelbert*, who before was King of *Kent*, *Essex*, and *Suffex*.

2. What character is given of this Monarch?

A. That he was sweet-temper'd, wise, valiant, and very pious.

Q. By what action did he signalize himself?

A. The *Danes* having invaded his dominions, and seiz'd upon *Winchester*, he took the field against them at the head of a numerous army, and by totally routing them, compleated what *Osrick* and *Ethelwolf*, earls of the *West-Saxons*, had begun.

Q. Did he gain any other victory?

A. No; but he was making preparations for more considerable exploits, when death put a stop to them in the year 866, which was the sixth of his reign.

ETHELRED, Vth King of England.

From 866 to 872.

			<i>Emp. of the West</i>
<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emp. of the East.</i>	<i>and K. of France.</i>
NICHOLAS I. 858.	MICHAEL III. 842.	LEWIS II. 855	
ADRIAN II. 867	BASILIIUS I. 867		

Q. WHO succeeded *Ethelbert*?

A. His Brother *Ethelred*, who ascended the throne in 866, by virtue of *Ethelwolf's* last Will.

Q. What is particularly observed of this Prince?

A. That all his actions had piety for their principle. He is also applauded for his valour, prudence and justice.

Q. What actions did he perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. He drove out the *Danes*, who had invaded his dominions; entirely laid waste the kingdom of the *East-Angles*; took and plunder'd the city of *York*, and made dreadful havock in the kingdom of *Mercia*.

Q. What other memorable actions did he perform?

A. He sent succours to the King of the *Mercians*, who was infested by the abovementioned Barbarians, and defeated them; but in another battle his army was routed, and he himself lost his life.

Q. When did this misfortune happen to him?

A. Anno 872, in the sixth year of his reign.

Q. Did the *Danes* make any advantage of this victory ?

A. They fortified themselves in the kingdom of the *East-Angles*, of which they had dispossest'd *Edmund* in 870, and were very troublesome to King *Alfred* his brother and successor.

ALFRED, surnamed the Great, VIth King of England.

From 872 to 900.

Popes.		Emperors of the East. and Kings of France.		Emperors of the West	
JOHN VIII.	872	BASILIIUS I.	867	LEWIS II.	855
MARTIN II.	882	LEO VI.	886.	CHARLES II.	873
ADRIAN III.	884			CHARL. III.	880
STEPH. VI.	885			ARNOLD	888
FORMOSUS	890			LEWIS III.	899

Q. WHO was *Ethelred's* successor ?

A. *Alfred* his brother, who began his reign in 872.

Q. Was he not a Prince of a very great character ?

A. Few *English* monarchs have possess'd such great accomplishments : for he was constant and resolute in adversity ; moderate in prosperity ; and with wonderful patience sought for expedients to extricate himself when unsuccessful ; skilful in making his advantage of all opportunities ; in a word, he was brave without rashness, devout without affectation, magnificent, liberal, and adorn'd with so many virtues as justly merited him the surname of *Great*.

Q. What success had he in the beginning of his reign ?

A. Very bad ; for the *Danes*, who were now vastly numerous in *England*, fell upon him with so much fury, that he was glad to have only part of *England* left him by a treaty. He indeed had so much credit left, as to oblige them to give him hostages for the better security of this peace.

Q. Did it last for any time ?

A. Till the *Danes* found an opportunity of breaking it to their advantage.

Q. Were they successful in this war ?

A. It was so fatal to them, that *Alfred* would have forced them to return back into their own country, had not the famous *Rollo* come to their assistance, who obliged *Alfred* to hide himself in a remote corner of *Somersetshire*, till such time as he might meet with an opportunity of recovering his dominions.

Q. Did he continue long there ?

A. As *Rollo* had drawn off his forces, and *Hubba*, one of the most formidable *Danish* generals, having been defeated by the *English*, whom he had besieged in a strong hold ; *Alfred* put himself at the head of an army, totally routed the *Danes*, and forced them to leave his dominions, or be baptized.

Q. Did any of them yield to the latter ?

A. Yes ; and among the rest *Gormund*, and King *Alfred* gave him the kingdoms of *Northumberland* and *East-Angles*, upon condition that he should do homage to him for them.

Q. Did the *Danes* return back ?

A. Not once during the remaining part of his reign, when *Alfred* finding that all his dominions enjoy'd an uninterrupted calm, made a voyage to *Rome*, where he got *Adrian II.* to set the crown upon his head.

Q. In what did he chiefly employ himself after his return from *Rome* ?

A. In enacting good laws for the security of his subjects, and in encouraging arts and sciences, which were then drooping ; and for that purpose he founded the university of *Oxford*. He built two magnificent Abbeys, and endow'd them with very rich revenues, and rebuilt the city of *London*, which had been entirely ruin'd in the late wars.

Q. Of what disease did he die ?

A. Of a contraction of the nerves, which, for two years together, had put him to excessive pain.

Q. In what year did he die ?

A. In 900, which was the 28th of his reign.

King EDWARD the ELDER, VIIth King of England.

From 900 to 924.

<i>Popes.</i>	<i>Emperors of the East.</i>	<i>Kings of France.</i>
STEPHEN VII.	885 LEO VI.	886 CHAR. IV.
THEODORE II.	901 ALEXAND. II.	911 ROBERT II.
JOHN IX.	901 CONST. PORPH.	912 RAUL I.
BENEDICT IV.	905	
LEO V.	905 <i>Emp. of the West.</i>	
CHRISTOPHER	906 LEWIS III.	899
SERGIUS III.	907 CONRAD I.	912
ANASTASIUS III.	910 HENRY I.	919
LONDON	912	
JOHN X.	913	

2 WHICH of the two sons of *Alfred* succeeded him?

A. Edward his eldest son, who began his reign anno 900, and was surnamed the elder.

2 Why was that name given him?

A. From his hair being white from his infancy.

2 What were the qualities of this monarch?

A. He possess'd all his father's good ones, his love for learning and gentleness excepted; but was equal to him for valour, piety, zeal, a due administration of justice, and for the love he bore his subjects.

2 How old was he when he succeeded the King his father?

A. This is not certain; all we know, is, that he was a minor, and that during the former part of his reign his mother was regent of the kingdom. However Mr. *Rapin* makes no mention of this regency.

2 How did she conduct herself in the administration?

A. With so much gentleness and equity, that her memory was dear to the *English* many ages after her death.

2

Q. Did Edward perform any memorable action?

A. He obliged *Constantine III.* King of *Scotland*, to sue to him for peace; forced the *Welsh*, who had revolted, to return to their allegiance. *Ethelward*, his brother, took up arms against him, and heading the *Danes* of the kingdom of *Mercia*, who had crown'd him King thereof, he ventur'd a battle, but lost his life in it.

Q. Are these the most remarkable actions we meet with in King Edward's life?

A. He united the kingdom of *Northumberland* and that of the *East-Saxons* to his crown; founded the university of *Cambridge*, but all are not agreed upon this article, and took a particular care of the education of his children.

Q. Had he many?

A. By *Elfreda* his first wife, he had six daughters, who were all nuns, except *Eugina*, who was married to *Charles* the simple King of *France*; and *Edbold*, second wife of *Hugh* surnamed the *Great*, father of *Hugh Capet*, descended from the third race of the Kings of *France*. By *Elgira* his second Queen, he had two sons, viz. *Edmund* and *Eldred*, who both succeeded to the crown. He had also a natural son call'd *Athelstan*.

Q. How many years did he reign?

A. Twenty-four, and died in 925.

ATHELSTAN, VIIIth King of England.

From 925 to 941.

Popes.		Emperor of the East.	
JOHN X.	913	CONSTAN. PORPH.	912
LEO VI.	928	Emperors of the West.	
STEPHEN VIII.	929	HENRY I.	912
JOHN XI.	931	OTHO I.	936
LEO VII.	936	Kings of France.	
STEPHEN IX.	939	RAOUL I.	923
		LEWIS IV.	936

Q. WERE any of the sons of Edward the Elder of age to succeed him?

A. None but *Athelstan* his natural son, whose rare and uncommon virtues throwing a shade over the defects

fects of his birth, the *English* unanimously set the crown upon his head in 925.

Q. Did he accept it?

A. Yes; upon condition, that after his decease it should revert to the legitimate children of his father.

Q. Did he signalize himself so as to answer the high expectations the *English* had conceived of him?

A. He gain'd several victories over his enemies.

Q. Pray give some account of them.

A. He forced *Hoel* King of *Wales* to pay him tribute; defeated *Constantine III.* King of *Scotland*, in several battles; took *Rocheſter* the capital city of the *North-Britons*, and seized upon the dominions of their King. Nor was he less successful in his wars against the *Britons* who inhabited the west of *England*, for he dispossessed them of their kingdom, after having taken *Exeter*, the chief city thereof.

Q. What other considerable actions did he perform?

A. He conquer'd the *Cornish Britons*, and entirely ruin'd the power of the *Danes*, by seizing upon the citadel of *York*, which he razed.

Q. Are these the only remarkable transactions of his reign?

A. He protected *Queen Eugina*, King *Edward's* daughter, and wife to *Charles the Simple*, King of *France*, who fled for refuge to his court with the King her son, in order to secure him from the cruelty of the usurper *Raoul*; he likewise contributed very much to the restoration of *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine*, whom he recommended to the favour of *William* surnamed *Longsword* Duke of *Normandy*. In his time liv'd *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Danish* champion, the great *Goliath* of that people, near the walls of the city of *Winchester*.

Q. Did he enjoy a long reign?

A. During sixteen years, and died the 28th of October 941.

EDMUND surnamed the PIOUS IXth King of England.

From 941 to 948.

Popes.	Emperor of the West.
STEPHEN IX. 939	OTHO I. 936
MARTIN III. 943	King of France.
Emperor of the East.	LEWIS IV. 936
CONSTAN. PORPH. 912	

Q. WHO succeeded *Atbelstan*?

A. *Edmund* surnam'd the Pious, the legitimate and eldest son of King *Edward*.

Q. What character is given of this prince?

A. 'Tis plain from his surname, that he was chiefly distinguished for his piety; however, he was very brave, and a great lover of justice.

Q. What were his most memorable actions?

A. He gave admirable laws to his subjects; defeated the *Northumbrians*, who had rebell'd; gave up the counties of *Cumberland* and *Westmoreland* to *Malcom* King of *Scots*, and bestow'd great privilege on the churches.

Q. In what manner did he die?

A. He was assassinated as he was feasting among his nobility at his manor of *Puckle-Church* in *Gloucestershire*, where he was celebrating the memory of the first conversion of the *Saxons*, on Tuesday the 26th of May 946, in the eighth year of his reign.

Q. Who perpetrated this horrid murder?

A. One *Leolt*, a vile wretch whom he had banished.

Q. Did he leave any children?

A. He had two sons by *Elgiva* his Queen, viz. *Edwin* or *Edwy*, and *Edgar*, who being too young to take upon them the administration of the kingdom, did not immediately succeed him.

EDRED,

EDRED, Xth King of England

From 948 to '955.

Pope		Emperor of the West	
AGAPETUS	946	OTHO I.	936
Emperor of the East.		King of France.	
CONSTAN. PORPH.	912	LEWIS IV.	936

Q. WHO succeeded to the crown of England after the death of *Edmund*?

A. *Edred* second son of *Edward the Elder*.

Q. By what right did he succeed to it?

A. As the present juncture of affairs requir'd a person of experience to manage them, and King *Edmund's* sons being very young, he was elected by the unanimous consent of the whole nation.

Q. When he did begin his reign?

A. Anno 948. He gave the highest testimonies of his piety and zeal for propagating the faith. His great veneration for all things dedicated to the service of God, and the particular care he took of the clergy, join'd to an uninterrupted practice of the most exalted virtues, justly merited him the surname of *Very-pious*.

Q. Did he signalize himself by any memorable action?

A. He punish'd the *Northumbrians* who had rebell'd; check'd the *Scotch*, who threatned him with a bloody war.

Q. To what did he chiefly apply himself during his administration?

A. In promoting virtue and peace; in encouraging arts and sciences in his dominions, and in building churches and monasteries, which he endowed with rich revenues.

Q. What instance have we of his great humility?

A. He submitted his body to be chastiz'd at the pleasure of *Dunstan* abbot of *Glanſtenbury*, and committed all his treasure and jewels to his custody.

Q.

Q. In what year did he die ?

A. In 955. after having reigned seven years.

Q. Where was he interr'd ?

A. In the old minster without the city of *Winchester* ; whose bones, with those of other monarchs, are to this day preserved in a gilt coffin, fix'd in the wall on the south side of the choir.

EDWIN or EDWY, XIth King of England.

From 955 to 959.

Pope.

Emp. East.

JOHN XII. 955.

CONSTAN. PORPH. 912.

Emp. West.

King of France.

OTHO I. 936.

LOTHARIUS I. 954.

Q. WHO succeeded *Edred* ?

A. *Edwin* his nephew, and eldest son of *Edmund* and Queen *Elgiva* his wife.

Q. When did he begin his reign ?

A. Anno 955. being then but fourteen years of age.

Q. What do historians say of this Prince ?

A. That he was as wicked as his predecessors had been virtuous.

Q. After what manner ?

A. He gave a loose to all sorts of crimes ; the most chaste women were not secure from his outrages, for he even debauch'd his own cousin ; and his court was compos'd of none but concubines, and men of the vilest character.

Q. Did not his impiety carry him to much greater lengths ?

A. He plunder'd the treasures of the churches, load- ed his subjects with taxes, and appropriated to him- self the tribute which was paid to the See of *Rome*, and this only for the sake of enriching the instruments of his abominable pleasures.

Q.

Q. Did the *English* suffer him to go on in his crimes?

A. The clergy made strong remonstrances to him, who thereupon banish'd such among them as had discover'd the greatest zeal, and among the rest Bishop *Dunstan*; and the laity, after having complain'd for some time, at last broke out into open rebellion.

Q. Who were those that first fomented the insurrection?

A. The *Mercians* and *Northumbrians*.

Q. What did they?

A. They set up his brother *Edgar* in his stead, upon which *Edwin* was so deeply concern'd at it, that he died with grief.

Q. In what year did he die?

A. In 959, being the fifth of his reign; some historians relate that he was depos'd.

EDGAR, XIIth King of England.

From 959. to 975.

Popes.

Emp. East.

JOHN XII.	953	ROMANUS the younger.	959
BENEDICT V.	964	NICEPHORUS.	963
JOHN XIII.	965	JOHN TRIMEZES.	969
DOMNUS II.	972		
BENEDICT VI.	972		

Emp. West.

King of France.

OTHO II.	253	LOTHARIUS I.	959
----------	-----	--------------	-----

Q. IN what manner was *Edgar* rais'd to the throne?

A. The *Mercians* and *Northumbrians* having rebell'd against *Edwin*, set the crown on *Edgar*'s head in 959. he being sixteen years of Age.

Q. Describe the qualities of this Monarch.

A. He was as pious as his brother had been wicked; and his natural love for peace, which nevertheless he always rejected when it interfer'd with the honour of his crown, or the interest of his subjects, justly merited

rited him the surname of the *Peaceable*; which, with his other virtues, procur'd him that of the *love and delight of the English*.

Q. What actions did he perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. He endeavour'd as much as possible to repair the injuries which his brother had done to the churches; curb'd the insolence of the *Welsh*, who had been so bold as to make an incursion into his dominions; forc'd them to pay him an annual tribute of three hundred wolves heads; recall'd those who had been sent into banishment, and pardon'd several criminals who had been condemn'd to die.

Q. Upon what condition?

A. That they should bring him a certain number of wolves heads; in proportion to the enormity of their crimes. He deprived all those of the title of King to whom his predecessors had granted it, but left them the possession of their territories, upon condition that they should do him homage for them, and pay their usual tribute.

Q. What did he in favour of the church?

A. Pope *John XIII.* gave leave for the assembling a national council in his dominions, in order to reform the clergy. In it many were depos'd, and great numbers of monks drove from their monasteries; but these occasion'd great disorders in the ensuing reign.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Twice; first to *Elfreda*, by whom he had *Edward* the younger; and afterwards to *Elfrida*, whom he married, after having put her husband to death.

Q. In what manner was this done?

A. *Elfrida* was daughter to *Ordang* Earl of *Devonshire*, and was reputed to be the greatest beauty in the kingdom: *Edgar* being a widower, was desirous of marrying her; and to prevent his being impos'd upon, he sent *Ethelwold* his favourite, to see whether her charms answer'd the great character that was given of them; if so, to demand her in marriage of the earl her father.

Q. Did *Ethelwold* execute his commission faithfully?

A.

A. Struck with the lustre of *Elfrida's* beauty, he demanded her for himself; and in order to obtain the King's consent, he gave him a very unfaithful description of her charms; and afterwards desir'd his leave to marry her for the sake of her fortune, which amounted to a vast sum; cunningly insinuating to him, that as the little beauty she was mistress of render'd her unworthy of a great King, her great possessions would make the fortune of a private man.

2. Did the King acquiesce with his desires?

A. He lov'd him too well to oppose them; accordingly *Ethelwold* married the princess; and to hide, as he pretended, her deformity from the eyes of the court, he confin'd her in a castle, whence he would never suffer her to stir out.

2. Was it possible for him to conceal her long?

A. No, for the King appointing a day of hunting in *Harewood*, which was only a blind, he went to the castle, saw *Elfrida*, and was so enchanted with her beauty, that he immediately reproach'd *Ethelwold* with his treachery, drew him aside, and struck him with a dart, which kill'd him upon the spot; after which he married his widow. Historians tell us, that this is the only crime that can be laid to his charge, and that he afterwards enjoin'd himself a very severe penance upon that account: and *Elfrida*, to expiate her husband's death, though she had no hand in it, erected over the place where his blood was spilt a monastery of nuns, to sing over him.

2. When did King *Edgar* die?

A. The 8th of *July*, 975. after having reigned sixteen years.

D

ED-

EDWARD II. *the younger*, XIIIth King of England.

From 975 to 977.

<i>Pope.</i>	<i>Emp. East.</i>
BENEDICT VII. 975	BASILIIUS II. 975
<i>Emp. West.</i>	<i>King of France.</i>
OTHO II. 973	LOTHARIUS I. 974

2 WHICH of *Edgar's* sons succeeded him ?
A. *Edward II.* whom *Elfrida* brought to him. He began his reign in 975.

2 What is the character of this Monarch ?

A. He was a great saint, a good king, and the father of his people.

2 Did he enjoy a peaceable reign ?

A. No; for the loose ecclesiasticks who had been degraded in his father's time, finding it impossible to get themselves restor'd in his reign, because they still continued the same irregular courses, raised great commotions in the kingdom.

2 By whom were they fomented ?

A. By the Queen his step mother, and the earl of the *Mercians*; who caballing together, seem'd so strong a party, as quite overpower'd king *Edward*.

2 In what manner did he die ?

A. Being one day hunting in a forest, he happen'd to stray from his attendants; and wandering up and down, he at last arriv'd at a country-seat of his step-mother *Elfrida's* called *Corvesgate*, or *Corse-Castle*, in the island of *Purbeck*, according to *Cambden*. This cruel princess, who saw him coming at a distance, order'd one of her servants to kill him; and the better to effect it, she ran out to meet him with a smiling countenance. The King telling her that he was a-thirst, she commanded some wine to be brought to him; and just as he was beginning to drink, this wicked wretch

wretch gave him two deep wounds in the body with a ponyard.

Q Did *Edward* die upon the spot?

A He would have fled, but falling from his horse; the above-mentioned assassin immediately dispatch'd him, or according to others, finding himself wounded, he clapt spurs to his horse and rode away, but fainting thro' much loss of blood, he fell from his horse, and one foot hanging in the stirrup, he was dragged up and down the fields and woods, till in the end his body was left dead at the gate of the castle.

Q When did this sad catastrophe happen.

A The 18th of *March*, 979. in the third year of his reign. He was canoniz'd some time after, and rank'd among the martyrs, and it was thought that the great zeal which he discover'd for the due observation of ecclesiastical discipline, occasion'd his death.

ETHELRED II. XIVth King of England.

From 979 to 1016.

Popes.

Emp. East.

Kings of France.

BENEDICT VII. 975	BASIL II. 975	LOTHARI. I. 954
JOHN XIV. 984		LEWIS V. 986
JOHN XV. 985	Emp. West.	HUGH CAPET 987
GREGORY V. 996	OTHO II. 973	ROBERT I. 997
SILVESTER II. 999	OTHO III. 983	
JOHN XVII. 1003	HENRY II. 1002	
JOHN XVIII. 1003		
SERGIUS IV. 1009		
BENED. VIII. 1012		

Q Who succeeded *Edward the Younger*?

A His brother *Ethelred*; he began to reign in 979. at twelve years of Age.

Q What is related of him?

A That he was a wicked, cruel, and debauched prince.

Q Did nothing particular happen at his coronation?

A. 'Tis pretended that as *St. Dunstan* was setting the crown upon his head, he told him as by a prophetick spirit, that the crime which his infamous mother had perpetrated, and the guilt of those who had advised her to murder *K. Edward*, could never be expiated but by an abundant effusion of the blood of his unhappy subjects.

Q. Was this prophecy fulfill'd?

A. A little after; for the *English* being resolv'd not to submit to *Ethelred's* tyranny, took up arms against him; and he likewise made *Swain* King of *Denmark* his enemy.

Q. In what manner?

A. By a secret commission he cruelly caus'd all the *Danes* converted to Christianity, who had settled themselves in *England* under the preceding reigns to be massacred.

Q. Did this inhuman barbarity continue long unpunish'd?

A. No; for immediately after, *Swain* invaded *England* at the head of a powerful army; defeated that of *Ethelred*, and laid siege to the city of *Exeter*: but finding it impossible for him to take it, and being vigorously attack'd, he went back to sea?

Q. Did he not return?

A. A little after with a stronger and more numerous army, with which he conquer'd *England*; forced *Ethelred* to fly for refuge to the court of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*, whose sister *Emma* he had married.

Q. Did he continue long there?

A. Till the death of *Swain*, viz. the third of *January*, 1011; which he no sooner heard of, than he returned back into *England*: *Canute* or *Knute*, son of *Swain*, took the field against him, but was vanquished, drove from *Lincoln*, and forced to fly to his ships.

Q. Did not *Knute* return again?

A. A very little after; and as *Ethelred*, during his absence, had devoted himself entirely to pleasure, *Knute* found no one to oppose his descent, or stop the progress of his conquests till the beginning of the year 1016, when *Edmund*, eldest son of *Ethelred*, marched against him with a body of forces, and would have forced him

to cross the seas again, had he not been betray'd by the counsels of the treacherous *Edrick*; his presence being requir'd in another part of the kingdom, because of his father's death.

Q When did this happen?

A. The 23d of *April* 1016, after he had reigned thirty seven years, and aged fifty.

Q Did he leave any issue?

A. By *Elgiva* his first wife, he had *Edmund* who succeeded him, *Atbelstan* who died an infant, another son named *Edwy*, and three daughters; the eldest, call'd *Edgiva*, was married to an *English* earl, who lost his life in a battle; the second, call'd *Edgith*, had the ill fortune to be married to the treacherous *Edrick* duke of *Mercia*, and the youngest named *Edgiva*, was married to *Uthred* earl of *Northumberland*. By *Emma* of *Normandy*, his second wife, *Ethelred* had *Alfred* and *Edward*, and a daughter named *Goda*, who was first married to *Gauter* earl of *Mantes*, and afterwards to *Eustachius* earl of *Boulogne*.

EDMUND, surnamed Ironside, XVth King of England.

From 1016 to 1017.

Pope.

Emperor of the West.

BENEDICT VIII. 1012

HENRY II. 1001

Emperor of the East.

King of France.

BASIL II. 975

ROBERT I. 997

Q WHO succeeded *Ethelred*?

A. *Edmund* II. his eldest son; he began his reign anno 1016, and was surnam'd *Ironside*.

Q Why so?

A. Because of his extraordinary strength. He was one of the greatest captains of his age, but had the ill fortune to be oppos'd by a powerful enemy.

Q. By whom?

A. By *Knute*, King of *Denmark* and son to *Swain*, who possess'd the greatest part of *England* when *Edmund* came to the crown. *Knute* went and laid siege to *London*, which was almost the only city that had not submitted to his arms.

Q. Did he take it?

A. No; for *Edmund* gaining two compleat victories over him, forced him to raise the siege. A little after he beat him a third time, but not making his advantage of these successes, and being imposed upon by the counsels of *Edrick*, who had reconciled himself to him only with intention to betray him; *Knute* defeated him in his turn, and brought his affairs to so low an ebb, that those who had hitherto adher'd faithfully to him, abandon'd him, and submitted to the conqueror.

Q. What course did *Edmund* take in this unhappy juncture?

A. He got together those who still continu'd faithful to him, and advanc'd in order to fight the enemy; when, perceiving *Knute* at the head of his forces, he rode off from his own; upon which, *Knute* advancing forward, a furious combat ensued; but as neither of them had the advantage, they immediately ended their dispute by agreeing to divide the kingdom between them.

Q. In what manner was this division made?

A. *Knute* had the western part of *England*, and *Edmund* the eastern, who enjoy'd it but a few days.

Q. How so?

A. He was assassinated by the abovemention'd *Edrick*, who had twice betray'd him; or, according to others, he caused him to be thrust into the body as he was easing nature; when, cutting off his head, in hopes of ingratiating himself with *Knute*, he presented it to him, and spake to him as follows: All hail! thou now sole monarch of *England*, lo here is the head of thy rival, which for thy sake I have ventur'd to cut off.

Q. What answer did *Knute* make him?

A. For this service, says this brave monarch, thy head shall be advanced above all the peers of my kingdom.

Upon

Upon which, he order'd it to be immediately cut off, and had it placed on the highest gate in *London*. But other writers say, that King *Edmund* died a natural death in *London*, and that he was buried at *Glassenbury*.

2. When did the death of *Edmund* happen?

A. Anno 1017, after having reigned almost a year; but during this time he had given frequent testimonies of the most exalted valour, the most consummate prudence and the utmost goodness.

DANISH KINGS.

CANUTE or KNUTE, XVIth King of
England.

From 1017 to 1036.

Popes.

Emp. of the East. Emp. of the West.

BENE. VIII. 1012 BASIL. II. 975 HENRY II. 1002

JOHN XIX. 1034 CONST. X. 1025 CONR. II. 1024

BENE. XI 1033 ROMANUS II. 1028 Kings of France,

MICH. VI. 1034 ROBERT I. 997

HENRY I. 1031

2. DID *Edmund* leave any children behind him?

A. Yes; but they being very young, and as *Knute* was a formidable prince, and justly merited to command, the *English* chose him for their King in 1017.

2. What was the consequence of this election?

A. It put an end to a war which had continued upwards of two hundred years, and cost the two nations more than three hundred thousand men, kill'd in fifty-four land, and thirty-eight sea-fights; not to mention a numberless multitude of skirmishes and sieges.

2.

Q. What is the character of *Knut*?

A. He was one of the greatest monarchs that ever sway'd the scepter; and is applauded for a thousand shining qualities: the only thing he is censur'd for, is, his sometimes breaking out into a violent passion.

Q. With what temper did he govern the *English*?

A. His native sweetness and moderation won him entirely the hearts of the *English*: he promoted every thing which he thought was agreeable to them; put them into the highest offices of trust, and even intrusted them with the command of his armies which he employ'd against the Kings of *Scotland* and *Norway*.

Q. Did not he embellish the kingdom by various works?

A. He caus'd the cities, the abbeys and churches to be rebuilt, and lessen'd the taxes which the former monarchs had been oblig'd to levy, in order to carry on their wars.

Q. Had he no wars to maintain?

A. He vanquish'd the King of *Scotland*, who had made an inroad into *England*, and oblig'd him to become his tributary. He conquer'd *Norway*, whose King had also infested *Denmark*.

Q. What evil actions do some relate of him?

A. That he sent *Edward* and *Edmund* sons of the late King *Edmund*, and *Edwin* his brother, to whom, by contract, the moiety of the kingdom belong'd, to be basely murder'd; but by providence they were all preserv'd.

Q. In what manner did he endeavour to atone for his injustice?

A. By erecting churches and monasteries, and performing many good offices to his people.

Q. Did he not give some illustrious testimony of his piety?

A. Standing one day on the sea-shore, one of his courtiers said to him, that he was King both of earth and sea; upon which, sitting down on the strand, when the tide was coming in, he spake to the sea as follows, *The land on which I now sit, is mine: thou thy self art subject to my empire: I therefore command thee to stand still, and obey the voice of thy king.* But as the sea,

sea notwithstanding his orders, rose still higher, and came up to the place where he sat, and even beyond it, he turn'd himself to the flatterer:

Q. And what did he say to him?

A. Let us, said he, confess that there is no sovereign to whom the title of King of heaven and earth belongs, but he, who created them by his almighty power, and preserves them by his goodness. Let us therefore go and acknowledge him for such.

Q. What did he for this purpose?

A. He immediately went to the abbey-church of St. Peter's at Winchester, took his diadem from his head, and with it crown'd a crucifix, and could never afterwards be prevail'd upon to put it again on his head, but confess'd himself unworthy of it.

Q. Did he always continue in this pious resolution?

A. To the end of his life, which happen'd the twelfth of November, 1036, after having reign'd nineteen years.

Q. Was he married?

A. Twice; first with *Aluina*, and afterwards with *Emma*, King *Etzelbert's* widow.

Q. Had he any children?

A. By his first wife he had *Harold*; who was King of *England*, and a daughter married to *Goodwin* earl of *Kent*; and by his second *Hardiknute*, who, after his brother's death, was King of *England* and *Denmark*.

HAROLD, XVIIth King of England.

From 1036 to 1039.

Pope.

Emperor of the West

BENEDICT IX.

1033

CONRADE II.

1024

Emperor of the East.

King of France.

MICHAEL IV.

1034

HENRY I.

1031

Q. DID *Harold* meet with no opposition on his coming to the crown?

A. Most of the great men of the kingdom would have preferr'd *Hardiknute* to him; but as the last will of the

the King his father was in his favour, and that he had a great number of friends, he carried it.

Q. What were the qualities of this prince?

A. His impiety and injustice; his scandalous dissoluteness and mean spirit, had made him so odious to his subjects, that he was going to be deposed, when death deliver'd the kingdom of him.

Q. When did he die?

A. In 1039, being the third year of his reign.

CANUTE the Second, or HARDIKNUTE, XVIIIth King of England.

From 1039 to 1041.

Pope.

Emperor of the West.

BENEDICT IX. 1033

HENRY III. 1039

Emperors of the East.

King of France.

MICHAEL V. 1041

HENRY I. 1031

CONST. MONOM. 1442

Q. BY whom was Harold succeeded?

A. By Knute, or Hardiknute, his brother.

Q. What was he before?

A. King of Denmark, his father having left him those kingdoms by his last will.

Q. When did he begin his reign?

A. In 1039. His qualities resembled those of his brother, to which he added cruelty.

Q. In what manner did the English receive him upon his accession?

A. With great testimonies of joy, submission, and respect. However he was very ungrateful for the affection they had shew'd him; for he put to death all the barons who had adhered to his brother, and opposed him, and plunder'd the city of Worcester.

Q. Who was his prime minister?

A.

A. Earl *Goodwin* his brother-in-law, who endeavour'd by his abilities to atone, in some measure, for the crimes which the King's natural proneness to vice, made him commit, and which in some measure, render'd his administration supportable; for otherwise he would certainly have been either murder'd or deposed.

2 Give me an instance of his cruelty?

A. He sullied the beginning of his reign with a most horrid and unjust act, by causing the body of the late King his brother to be taken out of his grave, the head to be cut off, and thrown into the *Thames*, which a Fisherman finding, he buried it in the Church of *St. Clement's Danes*.

2 In what manner did he die?

A. Either by excess of drinking in a great banquet at *Lambeth*; by a sudden death, or a strong poison: be this as it will, 'tis certain he fell under the table, and died upon the spot.

2 What year did he die?

A. In 1043, in the third year of his reign.

2 What did the *English* do after his death?

A. They took up arms, drove out the *Danes*, and made a law, that no *Danish* prince should ever sway the *English* scepter. They celebrated the day of his death with sports and pastimes; and with this King ended the government of the *Danes* in *England*, after having continued only twenty-six years under the preceding Kings, though they had harra's'd the kingdom for the space of two hundred and forty years.

BRIT.

BRITISH KINGS.

ALFRED, XIXth King of England.

From 1042 to 1043.

Pope.		Emperors of the West.	
BENEDICT IX.	1033	CONRADE II.	1024
Emperor of the East.		HENRY III.	1039
CONSTAN. MONOM.	1042	King of France.	
		HENRY I.	1031

2. **D**ID *Hardiknute* leave any issue?
A. No; at least none who succeeded him, for his crimes and those of his brother, had made the government of the *Danes* so odious to the *English*, that the chief men of the kingdom met together, and made a law against the *Danes*.

2. What was the import of it?

A. That hereafter it should not be lawful to bestow the crown upon any person of that nation; and that whoever should dare so much as to propose it, should be looked upon as an enemy to his country, a traitor to the state, and guilty of high treason.

2. Did the *English* stop here?

A. No; they cut to pieces all the *Danes* they could find in *England*, and indeed very few of them escaped.

2. Whom did they elect for their King?

A. *Alfred* and *Edward*, the sons of King *Ethelred*, and younger brothers of King *Edmund*, were at that time in *Normandy*; they chose the elder, and accordingly sent deputies to him to offer him the crown, notwithstanding the opposition of earl *Godwin*, who, as he was desirous of enjoying the sovereign power under what-

ever

ever monarch should ascend the throne, was therefore unwilling that a prince of *Alfred's* capacity and genius should be seated in it.

2. Was this prince crown'd?

A. Goodwin dispatch'd a body of troops secretly towards the coasts, who put *Alfred* and his followers to the sword; so that few writers insert him in the catalogue of the Kings of *England*.

EDWARD III. surnam'd the Confessor, the XXth King of England.

From 1043 to 1065.

Popes. Emperors of the East. Kings of France.

BENED. IX. 1033	CONST. MONOM. 1042	HEN. I. 1032
GREG. VI. 1044	THEODORA 1054	PHIL. I. 1060
CLEM. II. 1046	MICHAEL VI. 1056	
DAMAS. II. 1048	ISAAC I. 1057	
S. LEO IX. 1049	CONSTANS XII. 1059	
VICTOR II. 1055	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
STEPH. X. 1057	HENRY III. 1039	
NICHOL. II. 1059	HENRY IV. 1056	
ALEXAN. II. 1061		

2. WHAT did the *English* after the death of *Alfred*?

2. They electd *Edward* his younger brother in his room; who cross'd the sea in the beginning of the year 1044, and was crown'd at *Winchester* by *Edsine* Archbishop of *Canterbury* on *Easter-day*, being about forty years of age.

2. Was he very much respected by the *English*?

A. In the former part of his reign they look'd upon him as a pious and devout prince, but at the same time he was thought to have no talents for governing.

2. Did things continue long in this state?

A. Yes, so long as earl *Goodwin* his brother-in-law was in credit and authority; but the King finding that this ambitious man abused his authority, he dismiss'd him from the administration.

Q. What do historians relate concerning his death?

A. That being one day at dinner with the King, this monarch said to him, that had his brother been living, they would have mutually assisted each other; and as he spoke, he look'd upon the earl with a very disdainful air.

Q. What did the earl say to this?

A. As he knew that the King suspected his being guilty of his brother's death, taking a bit of bread in his hand, he said, *May this be the last morsel I ever swallow, if I am guilty of your brother's death*; and immediately put it into his mouth.

Q. What followed after this?

A. It choak'd him, and left those who were present in an uncertainty, whether it were owing to any sudden transport, or a judgment from heaven; however, this incident is not taken notice of by the best historians.

Q. Have we no instance of his severity?

A. Yes, some historians relate, that he dispossest Queen Emma his mother, of all her possessions, and confin'd her in the castle of *Warwick*; as also that he so far gave ear to an aspersion cast upon her of unchaste familiarity with *Alwyn* bishop of *Winchester*, that for her purgation she was forced to undergo the *Ordeal* trial.

Q. In what manner was this perform'd?

A. Nine plough-shares red-hot, were laid at unequal distances, over which the criminal was oblig'd to pass blindfold and bare-footed, when, if he came off unhurt, he was judg'd to be innocent; if otherwise, guilty.

Q. Did she come off with honour?

A. Yes, and pass'd thro' them untouch'd, to the great astonishment of all the spectators.

Q. Did Edward gain any conquests over his enemies?

A. He repuls'd the *Danes*, who had made a descent at *Sandwich*. *Siward* earl of *Northumberland* one of his generals routed the *Scots*, and kill'd their King *Macbeth*. *Alfgan*, an *English* nobleman, and *Gryffin* prince of *Wales*, made an inroad into *England*, took and plunder'd *Hereford*; but they were totally routed by *Harold* son of earl

Goodwin.

Goodwin. In a word, *Edward* defeated, either in person, or by his generals, all those who dar'd to attack him.

Q. What did *Edward* do for the better government of his kingdom?

A. He collected the laws made by his predecessors, viz. from those of the *Danes*, *Saxons*, and *Mercians*, and of them made one body; taking all such as were most favourable to his subjects, and gave orders for their being duly executed; and 'tis in these laws or privileges, that the happiness of the *English* consists, and distinguishes them from all other nations in *Europe*.

Q. By what names are these laws entitled?

A. The laws of *Edward*. These were thrown aside under the reign of *William the Conqueror*, who suppress'd the original thereof, and all such copies as could be met with.

Q. What do other historians say concerning this?

A. That as to the common law, having its original from the above-mention'd compilation, it may indeed be true with respect to the *written laws*, but not of the customary and unwritten laws, which they affirm to be of greater antiquity.

Q. Did this suppress them?

A. Some few copies escaped, and certain fragments were found, which King *Henry I.* caused to be interwoven in what is call'd the *Magna Charta*, of which we shall make frequent mention in the sequel; and remitted that ignominious tax call'd *Dane-gelt*, imposed by his father, and which for forty years past had amounted to 40000*l.* a year.

Q. What were the qualities of *Edward*?

A. The Church honour'd him as a great saint, and *Romish* writers relate, that God wrought a great number of miracles by his means during his life-time, and by his prayers after his death; that he observ'd an inviolable chastity with *Edytha* his consort, tho' others say, that the reason why he did not converse with her as with a wife, was because of the displeasure he had taken against earl *Goodwin* her father. Be this as it will, 'tis certain that he possess'd all those qualities that con-

stitute the most pious Christians; to which we will add, that he was brave, prudent, and zealous for his subjects welfare.

Q. What other remarkable particulars do the above-nam'd *Romish* historians say of him?

A. That by his *Touch*, he cur'd the disease which now goes by the name of the *King's-Evil*; but how far imagination might influence these cures, I shall not take upon me to determine.

Q. What considerable buildings did he erect?

A. Of a little monastery he made a most beautiful abbey-church call'd *Westminster*, where he provided his own sepulchre, which has since been made use of as the burial-place of the *English* monarchs; and another church dedicated to St. *Margaret*, standing without the abbey, and endow'd the former with very rich revenues. He also founded the college of St. *Mary Ottery* in *Devonshire*, and remov'd the bishop's See from *Credington* to *Exeter*.

Q. When did he die?

A. In December 1065, in the room of his palace at *Westminster*, now call'd the painted chamber, and was buried in *Westminster-abbey*. He reign'd twenty four years, and in him, the government of the *English* Kings ended, after having lasted near four hundred years.

HAROLD II. the XXIst King of England.

Q. WHO succeeded *Edward* the Confessor?

A. Some Authors pretend that he had declar'd *William* the bastard, duke of *Normandy*, his Heir; but the aversion which the *English* had for a foreign servitude, made them oppose his will.

Q. What did they do in this case?

A. They sought for a King among themselves, and were divided between *Edgar Atheling*, son of the great King *Edmund*; *Harold*, son of earl *Godwin*.

Q. Which of the two carried it?

A. *Edgar's* party was the weakest, and his birth was doubtful; so that *Harold*, having just pretensions to the crown by his mother's side, who was daughter to

Knut,

Knute, was preferr'd. He was a man of very great merit, and had the character of an excellent soldier.

Q. Did *William* oppose this election?

A. It was not in his power to do it, he having no forces; however he sent ambassadors to assert his claim.

Q. What reception did they meet with?

A. They were not so much as heard; and *Harold* being acknowledged King, was not more favourable to those whom *William* sent, and by whom he offer'd to give up all his claims to *England*, provided he would do homage to him for it, and become his tributary.

Q. Did *William* stop here, after having sent this embassy?

A. No; *Tosti*, King *Harold*'s brother, but his sworn enemy, had married his wife's sister, who was daughter to *Baldwin* earl of *Flanders*; him *William* prevail'd with to take up arms, by which he might be enabled to dispute the crown with his brother: and accordingly the earl of *Flanders* having assisted him with a body of forces, he cross'd into *England*, but was defeated.

Q. What did *Tosti* do after this ill success?

A. He went to *Harold* King of *Denmark*, who had an army on foot; and propos'd to him the conquest of *England*, which, according to the account he gave of matters, might be very easily effected: upon which the *Danish* King embark'd his army on board a fleet of 500 sail of ships, came into *England*, and took *York*; but notwithstanding the advantageous situation of his camp, he nevertheless lost the battle and his life, and *Tosti* was also kill'd in it.

Q. Was *William* dishearten'd at these victories?

A. No; he equipp'd a strong fleet, and reinforcing his army with several bodies of soldiers that were sent him by the neighbouring Princes, he cross'd into *England*.

Q. Where did he land?

A. At *Pevensey* in *Suffex*, and advancing towards *Hastings*, he there encounter'd *Harold*; here was fought the great battle between the *English* and *Norman* nations; a battle, the most memorable of all others; and

tho' miserably lost, was yet fought with the utmost bravery by the *English*: and the many wounds which *Harold* receiv'd, who lost his life and his crown in it, and the slaughter a prodigious number of his *English* Soldiers, manifestly shew how gloriously they exerted themselves, in order to save their country from the calamity of a foreign servitude.

Q. What do Historians say contributed to facilitate this victory to the *Normans*?

A. The continual peace which the *English* had enjoy'd for fifty years, after they had freed themselves from their former enemies the *Danes*, which had made them neglect the military arts, and abandon themselves to luxury and idleness; add to this, the licentiousness of the clergy, the effeminacy, gluttony, and oppression of the nobility, and the drunkenness and disorder of the common people.

Q. What do others relate?

A. That it was owing to *Harold* himself, who grown insolent upon his success at *Stamford*, had kept the plunder of the field, and not distributed any of it among his soldiers, which made them discontented and unruly, and by that means occasion'd the loss of the battle; not to mention, that the *Normans* had a peculiar way of fighting with long bows, which the *English* being strangers to, did therefore tend very much to their disadvantage. And yet their own historians relate that the main battle of the *English*, consisting of bills, their antient weapons, kept so close together in one body, that no force could break them, till the *Normans* pretending to fly, drew them into disorder, and by that means won the battle.

Q. Was King *Harold*'s body found?

A. Yes, after long search among the dead, and was buried in *Waltham* abbey, which himself had founded.

Q. Did he leave any children behind him?

A. Four sons, viz. *Goodwin*, *Edmund*, *Magnus*, and *Wolf*; the two eldest, after the loss of the battle, fled into *Ireland*, and from thence made some attempts upon the western coasts of *England*, but with ill success.

NORMAN KINGS.

WILLIAM, *firnam'd the* CONQUEROR,
XXII^d King of England, and Duke
of Normandy.

From 1066 to 1087.

<i>Popes.</i>	MICHAEL VII.	1071
ALEXAN. II. 1061	NICEPHO. I.	1078
GREGO. VII. 1073	ALEXIS I.	1081
VICTOR. III. 1086	<i>Emperor of the West.</i>	
<i>Emperor of the East.</i>	HENRY IV.	1056
CONST. XII. 1059	<i>King of France</i>	
ROMA. IV 1068	PHILIP I.	1060

2. **W** hose son was *William*?

A. Of Robert duke of Normandy, and one of his mistress's nam'd *Arlotte* (whence some imagine the word *barlot* deriv'd) a skinner's daughter of *Falaize*; which gave occasion to his being *firnam'd the Bastard*, but he afterwards chang'd it to that of Conqueror, by the conquest of *England*.

2. Pray give some account of this amour.

A. As he was one day riding to take the air, he happen'd to pass by a company of rural damsels who were dancing, when he was so taken with the graceful carriage of one of them (the abovemention'd *Arlotte*) that he prevail'd with her to cohabit with him from that very night; and ten months after she was deliver'd of our duke *William*.

2. Did he succeed to the dominions of his father?

A. Yes; this prince bore a very great affection for him; and observ'd in his infant deportment something so great and noble, as quite charm'd him. So that upon his

his going to set out for the wars in the *Holy-land*, he caus'd *William* to be recogniz'd his heir.

Q. To whose care did he recommend him?

A. To that of *Henry I.* King of *France*, who protected and defended him against his rebellious subjects, and certain great men, who imagin'd they might justly lay claim to his dukedom.

Q. In what year was *William* the conqueror born?

A. In 1026. and his father caus'd him to be acknowledged his successor to the dukedom of *Normandy* in 1033, bastardy being in those days no bar to succession.

Q. When did he succeed him?

A. In the month of *June* 1035, being but nine years of age; and his success in the battle of *Hastings*, gave him the crown of *England* the 29th of *October*, an. 1066.

Q. Pray describe the person and qualities of this conqueror.

A. He was tall, thick-set, and big; and his corpulency was troublesome to him in his latter years. He was robust, laborious, season'd to all the hardships of war; patient of heat and cold, hunger and thirst; had a great soul, an elevated mind, and a prodigious genius which suffer'd nothing to escape its researches; he delighted in war, understood it well, and had great success in it; but when once he was rais'd to anger, it was impossible to appease him. This the *English* found to their cost; for *William*, wearied out with their insurrections, treated them with so heavy a hand, as almost merited the name of tyranny.

Q. And how was this?

A. He punish'd the mutineers without mercy, bestow'd their possessions on *Normans* and such of the *English* as had been faithful to him; stript the whole *English* nation of its privileges, abolish'd its Laws, and establish'd those of *Normandy* in their room. Tho' others extol his clemency, which they say was manifest from his receiving into favour those who had rebell'd against him; and there being but one nobleman, viz earl *Waltheof*, who had twice broke his word with him, executed under his reign.

Q. What did he do still further ?

A. He seized upon all the treasures of the kingdom, not sparing those of the church, and transported them into *Normandy*; disarm'd all the *English*; laid a general land tax, and commanded all his subjects, under severe penalties, to go to bed, and put out their fire and candle at the ringing of a bell called *Corfeu*, or *Cover-fire* and this to prevent their night meetings.

Q. What did he afterwards prohibit them ?

A. To hunt, or sell timber in their own forests without his express leave first obtain'd for that purpose. He likewise commanded them to use the *Norman* tongue only, in all their law proceedings. In a word, he govern'd *England* like a conquer'd country, insomuch that no sovereign ever reign'd with more despotic sway.

Q. Let us, if you please, return to the battle of *Hastings*; what were the consequences of it ?

A. The *English*, after the loss of this battle, were for raising a new body of forces; but *William* not giving them time sufficient for the doing of it, and marching towards *London* with great dispatch, he obliged the inhabitants thereof to send deputies to him, who accordingly came and brought him the keys of that city, altho' *Edwin* and *Marcher*, earls of *Northumberland* and *Mercia*, had endeavour'd to set up *Edgar Atheling*, the right heir to the crown, to which the rest of the nobility had consented, if they had not found the bishops wavering.

Q. Did he march up to it ?

A. Yes; and *Stigand* archbishop of *Canterbury*, having refused to recognize and crown him, tho' others say it was because of some defect in his investiture, the ceremony was perform'd at *Westminster*, by *Aldred* archbishop of *York*, on *Christmas-day*, anno 1066.

Q. Did all *England* submit to his authority ?

A. No; *York* and *Oxford* still held out, and he punish'd them with such great severity for their resistance, as terrify'd even the most obstinate; upon which they strove who should first submit to him.

Q. Did this submission continue for any time ?

A. Some noblemen went over into *Denmark*, and pre-

prevail'd with *Swain*, King of that country, to invade *England* with an army; accordingly he came, took the city of *York*; but not long after, *William* defeated him, and the rebels were oblig'd to sue to him for a pardon.

Q. Did he grant it them?

A. Yes; but their repeated insurrections afterwards, oblig'd him to go those lengths I have already taken notice of; and from that time he consider'd them as a people with whom clemency and gentleness would have no other effect, than to make them more rebellious.

Q. What other wars had he to maintain?

A. Several against the *Welsh* his neighbours, whom he defeated in various battles, and forced to pay him tribute: *Malcolm* King of the *Scots* likewise attack'd him, but he oblig'd him to do him homage; however this is denied by the *Scottish* historians. He also made war upon the Duke of *Britany*, for his refusing to pay homage to him.

Q. Had he no dispute with *France*?

A. Exasperated at *Philip* the first's having succour'd *Dol*, to which he had laid siege, and for his having fomented the rebellion of *Robert* his eldest son, he enter'd *France* at the head of a powerful army; besieged, took, and plunder'd *Mantes*, and at last set fire to it; but this cruel action cost him his life.

Q. In what manner did this happen?

A. He went so near the flames, that the violence thereof threw him into a fever, which, together with a fall he had from his horse, oblig'd him to get himself convey'd to *Roan*, where he died the 9th of *September*, 1087, being the 61st year of his age, and the twenty first of his reign.

Q. Where was he interr'd?

A. In *St. Stephen's* abbey in *Caen*, which he had erected, and endow'd with rich revenues at his death.

Q. Was not he married?

A. He married *Maud* or *Mathelda*, daughter to *Baldwin* the fifth of that name, earl of *Flanders*.

Q. Had he any children by her?

A. Four sons, viz. *Robert*, *Richard*, *William*, and *Henry*;

Henry; and five daughters, viz. *Cecily, Constantia, Adela* married to *Stephen* earl of *Blois*, *Margaret* and *Eleanor*.

Q. In what manner did he divide his dominions among his sons?

A. To *Robert* the eldest he gave *Normandy*; *Richard* was kill'd by a deer in new forest; to *William*, *England*; and prince *Henry* had his portion in money, which amounted to no more than five thousand pounds; and upon the complaint he made to his father of the ill provision that had been made for him, King *William* comforted him and promis'd him, as from a prophetic spirit, that the dominions of his brother would be united in his person; which accordingly happen'd.

WILLIAM II. surnam'd RUFUS, XXIII^d King of England.

From 1087 to 1100.

Popes.	Emp. of the East.	King of France.
VICTOR III. 1086	ALEXIS I. 1081	PHILIP I. 1060
URBAN II. 1088	Emp. of the West.	
PASCHAL II. 1099	HENRY IV. 1056	

Q. Which of King *William's* sons succeeded to the crown of *England*?

A. *William II.* surnam'd *Rufus*, his second son; *Robert* the eldest, being excluded for having taken up arms against his father, and had only *Normandy* for his portion.

Q. Why had *William* the surname of *Rufus*?

A. From the colour of his beard and hair.

Q. What did this Prince do in the beginning of his reign?

A. He gain'd the love of his subjects by his great munificence; and was crown'd by *Lanfranc* archbishop of *Canterbury*, on sunday the 26th of *September*, anno 1087; but he was very much cross'd by his brother.

Q. Did any thing remarkable happen?

A. *Odo* bishop of *Bayeux*, and earl of *Kent*, his uncle form'd a strong party in the kingdom, in order to set
Robert

Robert duke of *Normandy* upon the throne; and this prelate had laid his schemes so well, that every one thought *William* was inevitably lost.

Q. What extricated him out of this difficulty?

A. His own diligence; for he did not give the rebels time to join themselves in a body, but dispers'd them entirely before *Robert* could come over into *England*, which oblig'd him to retire; at least, if he cross'd the sea, 'twas without success.

Q. Did not *William* afterwards revenge himself upon his brother?

A. He enter'd *Normandy* at the head of a powerful army, and took several strong holds; but their common friends reconcil'd them in 1091, upon condition that which soever of the two should survive the other, should succeed to his dominions, in case he died without issue.

Q. Did a good harmony continue between them after this?

A. It does not appear that they quarrell'd, and *Robert* engaging himself in the crusade, and not having money sufficient for defraying the expences of his journey to the *Holy-land*, he mortgaged the dukedom of *Normandy* to his brother *William* for ten thousand marks of silver; a considerable sum in those days.

Q. Did *William* engage himself in any other wars?

A. He obliged *Malcolm* King of *Scots*, who had invaded *England*, to retire with loss, and punish'd the earl of *Northumberland*, who had rebell'd.

Q. Had he not some enemies to encounter, still more formidable?

A. Yes; and these were the *Welsh*, who from time to time used to make inroads into his territories, where they made a dreadful havock.

Q. In what manner did *William* revenge himself upon them?

A. He drove them back into their forests, where, pursuing them close at their heels, he cut a great number of them to pieces. Those who escaped having secur'd themselves in their rocks and other inaccessible places, all he could then do was to build strong forts

on the frontiers of their country, in order to check their incursions.

2. In what manner do historians relate King William's death?

A. Being one day hunting in *New-Forest* in *Normandy*, he was wounded by an arrow shot accidentally by one *Walter Tirrel*, a french Knight, of which he died on *Thursday* the 2d of *August*, anno 1100.

2. How many years did he reign?

A. About thirteen, and left no issue behind him, so that *Henry* his brother succeeded to the crown.

2. What were the qualities of *William II*?

A. He was cruel, self-interested, covetous; was publicly guilty of simony; and historians relate, that he insisted upon a reward from *St. Anselm* for having rais'd him to the See of *Canterbury*; and that upon his refusing to gratify him, he sent him into banishment. In a word, he carried his vices and his tyranny to so great a height, that the mortal wound he receiv'd was not consider'd as the effect of chance, but as sent by the hand of God, in order to rid his subjects of so wicked a prince.

2. Did he erect any considerable buildings?

A. He rebuilt *London-bridge*; rais'd a new wall round the tower of *London*, and built *Westminster-hall*.

HENRY I. surnam'd Beau-clerc, XXIVth King of England.

From 1100 to 1135.

Popes.

Emperors of the East.

Kings of France.

PASCH. II. 1096 ALEXIS I. 1081 PHIL. I. 1060

GELAS. II. 1118 JOHN COMNEN. 1118 LEW. VI. 1108

CALIST. II. 1119 *Emperors of the West.*

HONOR. II. 1124 HENRY IV. 1056

INNOC. II. 1130 HENRY V. 1106

LOTHARIUS II. 1125

2. DID William leave any issue behind him?

A. No; *Robert* ought to have succeeded him, as well by the right of primogeniture, as by the last

last treaty made between them ; but *Henry*, his younger brother, taking advantage of his absence, manag'd matters so well, that he was recogniz'd and crown'd King of *England*, the 15th of *August* 1100.

Q. Where was *Robert* at that time ?

A. He was employ'd in the wars in the *Holy-land*, so that he did not hear of his brother's death till the year following.

Q. What did he when he heard the news ?

A. The princes of the crusade had offer'd him the crown of *Jerusalem*, but he refus'd it, and got *Godfrey* of *Boüillon* elected, after which he return'd back to *Normandy* ; when he was very much surpriz'd to find that his brother had usurp'd the crown of *England* ; upon which he cross'd over into that island at the head of a great body of troops.

Q. What success had he in his attempt ?

A. His own and his brother's friends made themselves mediators in the affair, so that they agreed to a peace ; whereupon *Robert* resign'd all his pretensions, upon condition of having a yearly pension of five thousand marks of silver paid him ; and he obtain'd a general pardon for all the *English* who had taken up arms in his favour.

Q. Was this peace lasting ?

A. No ; for *Robert* from a generosity of temper that was natural to him, remitted to the King his brother, the pension he had promis'd him ; but having rallied him upon that account, *Henry*, who only wanted a pretence to make war upon him, made this a handle ; enter'd his territories with a powerful army, and took several strong holds.

Q. Did not *Robert* oppose him ?

A. He levied a body of forces, march'd out against *Henry*, and coming up with him near *Tenebebray*, a large town in the lower *Normandy*, gave him battle, in which he lost both his liberty and his province.

Q. What did *Henry* do with his brother *Robert* ?

A. He carried him into *England*, and imprison'd him in a castle, where he died of grief, after twenty-six years

con-

confinement, leaving a son, nam'd *William*, who was almost as unsuccessful as his father.

Q. Had *Henry* no dispute afterwards with the *French*?

A. Altho' *Lewis le Gros* had done him very signal-services, he nevertheless assisted the petty Lords of *Normandy*, who at that time were making war upon their sovereign, and afterwards declar'd himself openly; took *Gisors* and other strong holds.

Q. Did any thing remarkable happen in this war?

A. Historians talk very much of the battle of *Brenneville*, in which the *French* had at first all the advantage; but having quitted their ranks in great disorder, in order to pursue the routed enemy, King *Henry* found it no difficult matter to rally his forces, who drove back the *French* in their turn, and put them to flight.

Q. What accident befel *Lewis le Gros* in his pursuit?

A. He was stop'd by an *English* gentleman, but he cleav'd his head asunder with his sword, and rescued himself; after which he went into the forest of *Andeli*, where losing himself, he had like to have fallen into the hands of the victorious enemy, had it not been for a peasant who conducted him to *Andeli*.

Q. In what manner did this war end?

A. *Calistus II.* and the two Kings came to *Gisors* in 1120, and agreed to a peace, but it was soon broke. The war began a-fresh, and was carried on with equal success, when a fresh peace was concluded, which gain'd *Henry* more than he had lost.

Q. In what manner?

A. *Lewis le Gros* having given the investiture of the dukedom of *Normandy* to *William Cliton*, son to *Robert*; obliged this prince to resign, in favour of *Henry*, all his rights to that dukedom, and gave him in exchange the county of *Flanders*, which he did not long enjoy, for the year following he was kill'd at the siege of *Alost*.

Q. Was King *Henry* engaged in no other wars?

A. Yes, against the *Welsh*, whom he drove back into their holes and caves.

Q. Did he do any thing for the better government of his dominions?

A. Historians ascribe to him the *Magna Charta* above-

mention'd, and the institution of the parliament; the former is taken for granted, but the latter is very much doubted.

Q. For what reason?

A. From the improbability that so absolute and polittick a Prince as *Henry*, and whom no person in his whole dominions, St. *Anselm* excepted, dar'd to resist, would have so far hazarded his authority as to share it with the great men of his kingdom, to whom the kingly authority is very often obnoxious.

Q. Why did *Anselm* resist him?

A. The kings of *England* in those days had the privilege of bestowing investitures, with the *Pastoral Staff* and *Ring*, and to require an oath of allegiance from the prelates; this custom having been condemn'd by a council held at *Rome* in 1104. St. *Anselm* resolv'd not to suffer the *English* bishops either to receive the investiture, or to take the oath of allegiance, and refus'd absolutely to take it himself.

Q. Did not the King force him to it?

A. He at first behav'd with great temper and moderation, and sent some bishops to *Rome* to assert his rights, and *Anselm* went thither in person and pleaded his own cause; when the court of *Rome* having approv'd his whole conduct, *Henry* forbid him entrance into his dominions; but this severity heal'd all their differences.

Q. In what manner?

A. The Pope finding that it was not in his power to get this prelate recall'd, gave the bishops, leave to take the oath, upon which the King renounced his claim to the investitures.

Q. Was *Henry* ever married?

A. Twice; first with *Maud* daughter of *Malcolm V.* King of *Scots*, afterwards to *Adelaide*, daughter to *Geoffry* earl of *Louvain*, by whom he had no issue.

Q. How many children had he by his Queen *Maud*?

A. *William* duke of *Normandy*; *Richard*; *Sybil* countess of *Perch*; and *Maud*; whereof the three first perish'd miserably; for the pilots in their passage from *Normandy* to *England*, being overcome with liquor, run them upon the rocks near *Barfleur*, the 25th

of

of *November*, 1119. He also left twelve natural children behind him, whereof the most considerable was *Robert* earl of *Gloucester*.

Q. What became of *Maud*?

A. She was first married to the Emperor *Henry V.* and afterwards to *Godfrey* surnamed *Plantagenet*, count of *Anjou*, of *Touraine*, and of *Maine*.

Q. To what do authors impute the death of *Henry*?

A. 'Tis said that he eat so many lampreys as threw him into a fever, of which he died in the castle of *Lions* in *Brai* near *Rean*.

Q. When did he die?

A. About the end of *August*, after having reign'd thirty five years, and was buried in the abbey of *Reading* in *England*.

Q. Describe the qualities of this prince.

A. He was brave and judicious, but very immoderate in his ambition; had a mind little turn'd to piety, and did not scruple to break his word; to which we must add, that he was too passionately fond of learning.

House of BLOIS.

STEPHEN, XXVth King of England.

From 1135 to 1154.

Popes. Emperors of the East. Kings of France.

INNOCENT II. 1130 JOHN COMNEN. 1118 LEWIS VI. 1108

CELEST. II. 1143 EMANUEL COM. 1143 LEWIS VII. 1137

LUCIUS II. 1144 Emperors of the West.

EUGEN. III. 1145 LOTHARIUS II. 1125

ANASTAS IV. 1153 CONRAD III. 1138

ADRIAN V. 1154 FREDERIC I. 1152

Q. WHO succeeded *Henry I*?

A. *Stephen* surnam'd of *Blois*.

Q. What pretensions had he to the crown of *England*?

A. He was son to *Adela* daughter of *William* the conqueror, and of *Henry*, call'd *Stephen*, earl of *Blois*, kill'd in a battle fought against the *Saracens* near *Rams* in *Syria* in 1112.

Q. What title had he before?

A. That of earl of *Mortain* and *Boulogne*: his personal merit, the intrigues of his brother *Henry*, bishop of *Winchester*, legate of the holy See; and the privileges which he promis'd to grant the *English*, made them prefer him to *Maud* the Empress, who unfortunately was absent at that time.

Q. In what does the merit of *Stephen* consist?

A. In the greatness of his courage, his elevated genius, the prodigious extent of his views, and the soundness of his judgment; he was perfectly skill'd in the military arts, had great experience; had wonderful patience in concluding treaties, and forming alliances; his clemency and munificence were the most inconsiderable of his virtues: all these were in some measure heightened by the stature and majesty of his person; a placid and insinuating air; in a word, by something inexpressible, which render'd him one of the most amiable Princes of his age.

Q. What grants did he make in favour of the *English*?

A. He repeal'd that law of *William* the conqueror, which forbid the nobility to hunt or sell timber in their forests, without a special leave first obtain'd for that purpose; and permitted the revival of the laws which King *Edward* the younger had made in favour of the people. He was crown'd at *Westminster* the twenty sixth of *December* 1135.

Q. Did *Maud* and her husband bear tamely this usurpation?

A. No; *Godfrey* made himself master of *Normandy*, but lost it soon after; and the King of *Scots*, who sided with them, enter'd *England*; but upon some strong holds in *Northumberland* being deliver'd up to him, he advanc'd no farther; and while the new Monarch thought himself firmly establish'd on the throne, *Maud* enter'd *England* in 1139, accompanied with the earl of *Gloucester* her brother.

Q.

Q. Did her arms meet with great success?

A. She vanquish'd *Stephen* near *Lincoln* anno 1141, and took him prisoner; and this victory would have gain'd her the crown of *England*, had she not been so haughty.

Q. In what manner?

A. She dismiss'd with the utmost pride, *Queen Maud*, *King Stephen's* consort, who, in the most submissive manner, intreated to have her husband set at liberty; promising to give up all the pretensions which herself, and *Stephen*, had upon *England*.

Q. What was the consequence of her refusal?

A. The Queen resented it so highly, that her anger administering new force to her, she levied a great body of troops, and reinforcing them with those which prince *Eustace* her son had brought to her assistance, she marched out in search of the enemy, and coming up with them, vanquish'd them; and took the earl of *Gloucester* prisoner, who was exchange'd for *King Stephen* on *All-saints* day of the same year.

Q. Did the war continue after this for any time?

A. Till the 6th of *November* 1153, when *Stephen* having lost prince *Eustace* his only son, who died in the middle of *August* of the preceeding year, adopted *Henry*, son to *Maud* the Empress, and by that means secur'd to himself the enjoyment of the *English* crown till his death.

Q. What is related concerning this adoption?

A. That the Empress having had a private conference with *Stephen*, declar'd to him, that his adopting prince *Henry*, was no more than what justice required at his hands: at the same time affirming, that he was the fruit of their amours, and not of her marriage with *Geoffrey*, who, she said, had no manner of share in it. These weighty considerations prevailing with the King, he immediately agreed to adopt him.

Q. Did *Stephen* survive this peace any time?

A. He died the 25th of *October* the following year, after having reign'd nineteen years, and was buried in the abbey of *Feverham*, which he had erected for his
own

own burial-place and that of his family, whom he little thought would be interr'd here before himself.

Q. How numerous was it?

A. It consisted of four persons, viz. *Queen Maud* his consort, countess of *Boulogne*, and heir thereof; Prince *William*, who died young; *Mary*, who embraced a monastick life; Prince *Eustace* abovemention'd, who had married *Constantia*, daughter of *Lewis le gros*, by whom he had no issue.

*Line of PLANTAGENET,
or the House of ANJOU.*

HENRY II. XXVIth King of England,
Duke of Normandy and of Guienne,
Count of Anjou, of Poitou, of Tou-
raine and of Maine.

From 1154 to 1189.

Popes.

Emperors of the East. Kings of France.

ADRIAN IV. 1154 EMAN. COM. 1143 LEWIS VIII. 1137

ALEXAN. III. 1154 ALEXIS II. 1180 PHILIP II. 1180

LUCIUS III. 1181 ANDRON. I. 1183

URBANUS III. 1185 ISAAC II. 1185

GREGO. VIII. 1187 *Emp. of the West.*

CLEMENT III. 1188 FREDERIC I. 1152

Q. WHO succeeded Stephen?

A. Henry II. eldest son of *Geoffrey*, earl of *Anjou*, of *Touraine*, and of *Maine*; and of the Empress *Maud*, sole heir of *Henry I.* King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*; he was the first King of *England* of the *Line of Plantagenet*.

Q. What particulars are related of his youth?

A.

A. He was born at *Mans* the 5th of *March* 1133; made his first campaign in 1152, and was knighted on *Whitsunday* of the same year, by *David King of Scots*; *Stephen, King of England*, adopted him the 6th of *November* 1153.

Q. When was he crown'd King of *England*?

A. The Sunday before *Christmas-day*, anno 1155.

Q. What is the character of this Prince?

A. He possess'd a thousand fine qualities; was brave, generous, magnificent, clement, just, and prudent; but his ambition was insatiable; his desire of enlarging the bounds of his dominions, unbounded; and his anger very hot and violent.

Q. What did he immediately upon his accession to the throne?

A. He drove a great number of foreigners out of his dominions, who inur'd to war, did all that lay in their power to break the peace; raz'd to the ground such fortresses as belong'd to private persons, suffering those only to stand as he thought necessary for the defence, of his dominions; restor'd the county of *Westmoreland* to the King of *Scots*, who in return gave him up those of *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*.

Q. What did he after this?

A. Having done homage to *Lewis VII. King of France*, for his dukedoms of *Normandy* and of *Guienne*; his earldoms of *Anjou*, of *Poitou*, of *Maine*, and of *Touraine*; he falls upon *Geoffrey* his own brother, dispossesses him of the three last provinces; and afterwards declares war with *Raymond*, earl of *Toulouse*, founded on the claim which the Queen, his consort laid to the demesnes of that county.

Q. What was the success of this war?

A. *Henry* took *Cabors*, and besieged *Toulouse*, but to no purpose; upon which he concluded a peace, and *Lewis* the younger, King of *France*, who had sided with the earl of *Toulouse*, gave *Margaret* his daughter in marriage to *Henry*, the King of *England's* eldest son, and betrothed *Alice* to *Richard* his younger brother.

Q. In what other wars was *Henry* engag'd?

A. An *Irish* Prince being at variance with the other petty

petty sovereigns of that island, implor'd the succour of *Henry II.* who accordingly sent him a strong body of troops, under the command of earl *Richard*, who soon master'd the *Irish* Princes, and forced most of them, not excepting even him who had implor'd his assistance, to submit to the power of his arms.

Q Did not *Richard* rebel against him?

A. He was about to do so; but *Henry*, who made such prodigious dispatch in all his actions, that *Lewis* used to say, he flew; landed in *Ireland* before *Richard* had put himself in a posture of defence, when he forced him to implore his clemency, and to surrender up to him all the strong holds he had seiz'd upon; after which he conquer'd all the rest of the island, and since that time it has never been disunited from the crown of *England*.

Q Was he as fortunate in all his expeditions?

A. He took *William*, King of *Scots*, prisoner, who had made an inroad into *Northumberland*; vanquish'd *Philip*, earl of *Flanders*, who had made a descent into *England* at the head of a strong body of forces; and, after the death of earl *Geoffrey* his brother, whom the people of *Britany* had made earl of *Nants*, he oblig'd *Conan*, duke of *Britany*, who had seiz'd upon *Nants*, to give his daughter, heir to his dominions, in marriage to *Geoffrey* his third son.

Q Did fortune always favour him?

A. No; for not to mention the great trouble which the Pope gave him, for having put *Thomas Becket*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, to death; his wife and sons rebell'd successively against him, and hardly left him the least interval of peace from the year 1171 till his death.

Q Are the causes of these insurrections known?

A. They are ascribed to the little share which *Henry* allow'd his sons in the government; his obstinacy in reserving to himself the sovereignty of the several estates which he had assigned to them for their portions; and his amour with *Alice*, daughter of *Lewis* the younger, promis'd and betroth'd to *Richard* his second son.

Q Have not these amours something of the romantic air?

A. All the *English* historians mention them as real, and even say that *Henry* had a child by *Alice*; that he endeavour'd to get *Eleanor* divorced from him; and had resolv'd, in case he succeeded in it, to disinherit his two other children, for their having rebell'd against him; and to declare the children which should spring from this marriage, his successors.

Q. What was the result of this design?

A. It engag'd him in several wars with *Lewis* the younger and *Philip-Augustus* his son. And *Richard* refused to marry this princess after the death of his father.

Q. What were the wars in which *Henry II.* was last engag'd?

A. *Richard*, exasperated because he refused to let him have *Alice*, took up arms again, and join'd his forces to those of *Philip-Augustus*, when they drove the aged *Henry* out of *Mans* and several other cities.

Q. To what place did he retire?

A. To *Chinon*, where he fell sick with grief, upon hearing that his two sons were gone over to *Philip-Augustus*, and curs'd the day of his birth in his expiring moments. He also curs'd his rebellious children, tho' the clergy who were about him, endeavour'd as much as possible to dissuade him from it, but to no purpose. He was aged 56 years and 5 months, and had reign'd 34 years, 8 months, and 12 days.

Q. Whom did *Henry* marry?

A. *Eleanor* of *Aquitain*, dutchess of *Guienna* and of *Gascony*, countess of *Poitou* and *Saintonge*.

Q. Was not she married before?

A. Yes; to *Lewis* the younger, by whom she had two daughters; but he being dissatisfied with her conduct, had their marriage dissolv'd in the national council of *Bois-genci*, upon pretence of her being too nearly related to him.

Q. Had King *Henry* any children by her?

A. Five sons, whereof but two, viz *Richard* and *John* surviv'd him; but *Geoffrey* his third son, left a son and daughter behind him. He had also three daughters, viz *Maud*, married to the duke of *Saxony*; *Eleanor*, wife of *Alphonso* King of *Castile*; and *Jean*, consort to *William II.* King of *Sicily*.

Q.

Q. Had he no illegitimate children?

A. He had two by fair *Rosamond*, daughter of the lord *Clifford*, viz. *William* surnam'd *Long-sword*, earl of *Salisbury*; and *Geoffry* archbishop of *York*. By a daughter of *Sir Ralph Blunt* (others say *Blewit*) he had another son call'd *Morgan*, who was elected bishop of *Durham*.

Q. Relate the story of *Thomas* archbishop of *Canterbury*.

A. His name was *Thomas Becket*; he had made a great figure at court, having been chancellor and governor to young Prince *Henry*, and was look'd upon as a complete courtier. *Henry* had promoted him to the See of *Canterbury*, tho' he had oft intreated him not to raise him to that dignity; having been particularly offended at the encroachments which *Henry* made upon the liberties of the church.

Q. Did the archbishop spare the King upon this occasion?

A. No; upon which *Henry* was so much exasperated, that he banish'd him by a sentence of an unlawful assembly of prelates, who were devoted to his passions: but *Thomas* appeal'd from it to *Rome*; withdrew to the abbey of *Pontigni* in *France*, and afterwards into that of *St. Colombe de Sens*.

Q. What reception did the archbishop's appeal meet with at *Rome*?

A. *Alexander* III. at that time Pope, being a very strenuous asserter of the prerogatives of the clergy, publicly espoused *Thomas's* cause; which so enraged King *Henry*, that he made an alliance with *Frederic-Barberossa*, and *Paschal* the anti-pope; at which *Alexander* was so highly offended, that he put the kingdom of *England* under an interdict; when afterwards *Henry* banishing all the clergy out of his dominions, he excommunicated him.

Q. What was the result of this quarrel?

A. They were reconcil'd the 22d of *July* 1170; whereupon *Thomas* return'd back to his See, after having been banish'd seven years.

Q. Was this reconciliation lasting?

A. No; for the King upon certain false reports that

were

were made to him concerning the archbishop, complain'd publickly, that he had no one in his court to revenge him on that priest, from whom he had received such great insults; which four wicked wretches hearing, they, to please him, set out immediately for *Canterbury*, where they murder'd *Thomas* in his own cathedral, as he was saying vespers, on the 29th of *December*.

Q. What follow'd this murder?

A. The Pope excommunicated King *Henry*; but after having made a publick declaration that he was innocent of his death, and submitting himself to every thing that was requir'd of him, he went to *Avanches*, an episcopal city in the lower *Normandy*, where two legates gave him absolution.

Q. Did his zeal stop here?

A. In 1174, he went in pilgrimage to *Becket's* tomb.

Q. Do not historians differ very much in the character they give of this archbishop?

A. So much, that some have rank'd him among the most illustrious martyrs, while others thought they might justly refuse him the title of an honest man, and a good christian; and fifty years after his death, a dispute arose in the university of *Paris*, whether his soul was in heaven or in hell; so ambiguous was his piety.

RICHARD I. surnam'd Cœur de Lion, or
Lion's Heart, the XXVIIth King of
England and Cyprus.

K

From 1189 to 1199.

Popes.	Emperors of the East.	HEN. VI. 1190
CLEMENT III. 1188	ISAAC II. 1185	PHILIP I. 1197
CELEST. III. 1191	ALEXIS III. 1195	King of France.
INNOCENT III. 1189	Emp. of the West.	PHILIP II. 1180
	FREDERICK. 1152	

Q. WHO succeeded Henry II?

A. Richard I. his second son.

Q. What was the character of this Prince?

G

Q.

A. He was insatiably ambitious, covetous, and regardless of promises; but magnificent, liberal, clement, and of such bravery, as merited him the surname of *Cœur de Lion*.

Q. What are the most remarkable incidents in his history?

A. After having concluded a peace with *Philip-Augustus*, who gave him back *Mans* and the rest of the cities which he had taken from *Henry*, he went to *Roan*, where the ducal sword was put into his hand, on the 20th of *July*, 1189. He gave the earldom of *Mortain* to *John* his brother, cross'd into *England*, and was crown'd at *Westminster*, on the 3d of *September* of the same year.

Q. What actions did he perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. He raised an army of five and thirty thousand men, in order to go to the wars in the *Holy-Land*; left the government of *England* to *William Longchamp*, bishop of *Ely*, his chancellor; cross'd over again into *France*; had an interview with *Philip-Augustus* at *Vezelai*, the 25th of *June*; went to *Marseilles*, and from thence into *Sicily*, where he spent the winter with *Philip*, who also had engaged himself in the crusade.

Q. Did not a quarrel break out between these two monarchs in this country?

A. Yes; the ambition and sinister practices of *Richard* were just upon the point of bringing them to an engagement with one another, had not *Philip*, a Prince of great wisdom and moderation, prevented so fatal an accident by his great prudence; and by going to *Acon*, to which the christians had already laid siege.

Q. Did not *Richard* follow him?

A. He embark'd some days after, but a storm arising, part of his fleet was cast on the coast of *Cyprus*; when *Isaac*, King of that island, imprison'd and clapt in irons all those who had escap'd the shipwreck, and would not permit the princess of *Berengera* of *Navarre*, (betrothed to *Richard*) and the Queen Dowager of *Sicily* to shelter themselves in the port.

Q. Was not this cruel action fatal to *Isaac*?

A.

A. Richard defeated the troops of *Isaac*, dispossest him of his cities, and at first oblig'd him to become his tributary; but perceiving afterwards that he employ'd treachery, and used all his endeavours to over-reach him, he loaded him with chains, made himself master of *Cyprus*, left strong garrisons in it, and went afterwards to the camp before *Acon*.

Q. Did not the misunderstanding between him and King *Philip* break out afresh?

A. Scarce was King *Richard* arriv'd in the camp, but he endeavour'd to bribe the adherents of King *Philip*. Nor did he scruple to corrupt his soldiers, by giving them larger pay: but notwithstanding all his ungenerous usage, *Philip* was so surprizingly master of his temper, that he did not come to a rupture with him.

Q. What measures did King *Philip* take to prevent it?

A. Acon having been taken the 13th of *July*, 1192. and the King finding himself out of order, he left the camp; and leaving the command of his army to the duke of *Burgundy*, he put to sea again, pass'd by *Italy*, complain'd to the Pope of the insults he had receiv'd from *Richard*, and went to *Fontainbleau*, and there spent the Christmas holy-days.

Q. Did *Richard* signalize himself so as to answer the great reputation he had gain'd in the world?

A. The 7th of *September*, anno 1191. he entirely defeated the army of *Saladine*, and killed upwards of 40000 of his soldiers; but instead of making a proper advantage of this victory, he trifled away his time in re-building the Walls of *Joppa*; spent the summer following in unsuccessful negotiations, and was oblig'd to return back into *England*.

Q. What was the occasion of his return?

A. The news he heard that his brother had rebell'd, and the wars with which *England* was infested.

Q. What did he before his departure?

A. He married *Isabella*, Queen of *Jerusalem*, to *Henry* earl of *Champaign*, his nephew; gave his kingdom of *Cyprus* to *Guy de Lusignan*, and concluded a truce for three years.

Q. Was his voyage prosperous?

A. No; for he was cast away on the coasts of *Syria*; and having taken a resolution to travel thro' *Germany* in disguise, he fell into the hands of *Leopold* duke of *Austria*, whom he had affronted at the siege of *Acon*.

Q. What treatment did he meet with from him?

A. He kept him very close prisoner, and afterwards deliver'd him to the Emperor *Henry*, his sworn enemy, who resolv'd to confine him to a dungeon for life; but changing his mind, he only oblig'd him to pay a ransom of 100,000 marks of silver, and thereupon set him at liberty, the 4th of *February* 1194. after having imprison'd him a year, six weeks, and three days.

Q. Where did *Richard* go after this?

A. He hasted to *England* with all imaginable expedition; and after having been re-crown'd, he cross'd immediately into *France*, where *Philip*, who fomented the rebellion of *John* his brother, was invading his dominions.

Q. Did nothing extraordinary happen this year?

A. *John* being desirous of reconciling himself to his brother by some signal action, invited 300 men belonging to the garrison of *Evreux* to dine with him, but in the midst of the entertainment he murder'd them all; put the rest of the garrison to the sword, and seiz'd upon the city.

Q. Did this barbarous action go long unpunish'd?

A. *Evreux* suffer'd for it; *Philip* took it by storm, and set fire to it; but a few days after all his baggage falling into the hands of the enemy, the two Kings concluded a peace, in 1194.

Q. Did this peace continue for any time?

A. No; and *Richard* was punish'd for having violated it; for he lost two battles, as also the cities of *Aumale*, *Dieppe*, and some others: however a peace was again concluded between the two Monarchs, which nevertheless was not more lasting than the former.

Q. For what reason?

A. *Richard* laid siege to *Chalus* in *Limosin*, in order to seize upon a considerable treasure, which a nobleman of that country had found in his grounds: this was an antique of gold, in which one of the *Roman* Emperors, sitting at dinner with his family, was represented. Q.

Q. What was the event of this siege?

A. It was fatal to King *Richard*, for he was wounded with an arrow, which kill'd him, on the 6th of *April*, 1199. the tenth year of his reign, and the 43d of his age. He was buried at *Fontevraud*.

A. Was he ever married?

Q. Being at *Cyprus* the 30th of *March*, 1190, he took to wife *Berengera*, daughter to *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, but had no issue by her. In his reign the several companies or societies of the city of *London* were establish'd.

Q. Did he leave any natural children?

A. Only one son call'd *Philip*, to whom he bequeathed the lordship of *Cognac* in the dutchy of *Guienne*.

JOHN, surnam'd Sans-Terre, or Without Land, XXVIIIth King of England.

From 1199, to 1216.

Popes.		Emperors of the West.	
INNOCENT III.	1198	PHILIP I.	1197
HONORIUS III.	1215	OTHO IV.	1208
Emperors of the East.		French Emp of Constant.	
ALEXIS III.	1195	BALD. I.	1204
ALEXIS IV.	1203	HENRY I.	1206
ALEXIS V.	1204	King of France.	
THEODORUS I.	1204	PHILIP II.	1180

Q. WHO succeeded Richard I?

A. John, surnam'd Sans-terre; he usurp'd the crown in prejudice of Prince *Arthur*, son to *Geoffrey* of *England*, his elder brother.

Q. Was he undisturb'd in his usurpation?

A. *Philip Augustus* took *Arthur* under his protection, but his arms made very little progress; for not to mention that the earl of *Flanders* declared war against him, *Arthur* was reconcil'd to his uncle, upon which occasion *Augustus* concluded a peace with King *John*.

Q. What were the conditions of this treaty?

A. That King *Augustus* should surrender up to King *John* the earldom of *Evreux*, certain cities of *Berry*, and renounce the sovereignty of *Britany*, which King *Charles the simple* had given to *Rollo*, the first duke of *Normandy*.

Q. Was this peace lasting?

A. No; for King *John* having divorced *Avis*, his second wife, daughter of the earl of *Gloucester*, married *Isabella*, daughter and heir to *Aimar*, viscount of *Angoulesme*, and of *Adeleida* of *Courtenay*, affianced to *Hugh* Earl de la *Marche*; who thereupon made the nobles of *Poitou*, to take up arms.

Q. What was the consequence of this?

A. King *John* enter'd *Normandy* with a body of forces, which king *Philip* resented, because he committed hostilities without giving him the least notice; upon which he cited him to appear before his Parliament, and to shew reason for his proceeding in that manner: but King *John* refusing to do it, King *Philip* enter'd sword-in-hand into *Normandy*, and sent *Arthur* a body of troops, in order to make a diversion on his side.

Q. Did this young prince signalize himself by any memorable action?

A. He took a few cities; but *William des Roches*, his governor, having been surpriz'd by King *John* in *Mirabeau* to the castle-whereof he had laid siege, *Arthur* was carried prisoner to *Rouen*; and some days after, this cruel King caus'd him to be murder'd, and his body to be thrown into the *Seine*.

Q. Did this murder go unpunish'd?

A. *Philip* summon'd King *John* to appear and to shew cause why he had perpetrated so barbarous an action; but he refusing to obey, he declar'd him guilty of high-treason, confiscated his possessions, and advancing with a numerous army, he conquer'd *Anjou*, *Touraine*, *Maine*, and *Poitou*, and re-united all *Normandy* to his demesnes, three hundred years after it had been dismember'd from the crown of *France* by *Charles the simple*.

Q. Did not King *John* endeavour to oppose his conquests?

A. As he devoted himself entirely to his pleasures, he thereby gave his enemy an opportunity of taking advantage of his supineness and negligence; however he cross'd the sea in 1206. but being dishearten'd at the war, upon the very opening of it, he was glad to obtain a truce for two years.

Q. Did not he quarrel with the Pope?

A. The election of the archbishop of *Canterbury* gave him a great deal of trouble.

Q. In what manner was this done?

A. Some young monks of the cathedral of *Canterbury* had elected *Reginald*, the sub-prior, for their archbishop; but as the rest of the community had not been suffer'd to give their votes, they afterwards elected the bishop of *Norwich*.

Q. What was the consequence of this dispute?

A. The Pope refus'd to ratify either election; and commanded the monks, who were come to *Rome* upon that affair, to elect cardinal *Langton*, an *Englishman*, doctor of *Paris*, and a man of great learning and sound morals.

Q. How far was the king of *England* concern'd in this?

A. He enter'd his protest against the election, and expell'd the monks out of *Canterbury*; whereupon his whole kingdom was put under an interdict; which exasperated him to so great a degree, that he banish'd all the clergy out of his dominions; treated all those cruelly who continued in them after the time appointed for their going away was elapsed, and confiscated all their possessions.

Q. What measures did the Pope take upon this occasion?

A. He excommunicated King *John*, gave his Kingdom to King *Philip-Augustus*, and granted the indulgences of the crusade to all those who should declare war against him.

Q. What effect had this upon King *John*?

A. He at first laugh'd at it, but upon hearing that his

his subjects intended to make a general insurrection, and threaten'd to surrender him up to the *Welch*, who had taken up arms; and also that *Philip Augustus* was making extraordinary preparations, he recall'd the clergy, and receiv'd cardinal *Langton* to favour.

Q. Was this all?

A. From a meanness of spirit, for which he was censur'd by all his subjects, he submitted himself a vassal to the holy See, bound himself to pay an annual pension of a thousand marks of silver to the Popes; to hold his crown from them only, and to assist them in all their wars.

Q. Did his submission put a stop to the progress of King *Philip's* arms?

A. No; it was rather the league which *Reynold*, earl of *Danmartin*, and *Boulogne*, had form'd against *France*, at the head of which were *Otho* the Emperor, King *John Ferrand* of *Portugal*, earl of *Flanders*, *Henry* duke of *Brabant*, &c.

Q. What was the result of this league?

A. *K. John* enter'd *Anjou* with a strong body of forces possessed himself of *Angers*, and the greatest part of the whole province; but having in vain attempted the siege of *Nants*, *Lewis* son of *Augustus*, march'd to *Roche au Moine*, in order to fight him.

Q. Did this check the progress of his arms?

A. He immediately fled; by which means part of his army was either drown'd or cut to pieces, and all his baggage carried off; and after having rode nine leagues on a full gallop, he tamely suffer'd himself to be dispossest of all his conquests.

Q. Did the rest of the confederates meet with better success?

A. They march'd to *Bouvines*, in order to fight King *Augustus*, with an army that was thrice the number of his; but they were defeated; and historians inform us, that *Philip* there gain'd a more signal victory than any of the *French* Kings of the third race.

Q. Relate the particulars thereof.

A. The Emperor had like to have lost both his liberty and his life; and the earls of *Flanders* and *Boulogne* were taken

taken prisoners, together with the earl of *Salisbury*, who commanded the *English* forces.

Q. What behaviour did King *John* put on, when news was brought him of this terrible defeat?

A. In the transports of his rage he committed the utmost excesses, and was continually venting the most blasphemous expressions, and resolv'd to starve himself; but afterwards recovering himself, he obtain'd a truce for five years.

Q. Did his misfortunes end here?

A. His subjects requir'd him to restore the privileges of the *Magna-Charta*, which he granted them; but having afterwards broke his word, they declar'd for *Lewis*, eldest son of *Augustus*; who accordingly landed at *Sandwich*, and was crown'd in *London*, the 21st of *May*, anno 1216. according to some writers, but none of the *English* historians make the least mention of it: and afterwards made himself master of the best part of *England*.

Q. Did King *John* long survive these misfortunes?

A. He died the 28th of *October*, 1216. with grief for having lost his baggage, that threw him into a fever, which was increas'd by his eating too many lampreys, or, as others say, peaches; and drinking to great excess.

Q. How old was he?

A. Fifty one years, whereof he had reign'd fifteen.

Q. What is the character of this prince?

A. According to *Matthew Paris* he had wit, but of the vicious kind of it; was hot-headed, restless and hasty; had no manner of resolution, but in his first transports, which being over, he was soft, indolent, fearful and wavering; he was cruel, voluptuous and covetous; had neither faith, religion, conscience, honour or consideration for futurity. However we must make this observation, that those historians who have writ the lives of Princes that were at variance with the court of *Rome*, ought to be read with the utmost precaution; and that the only way of forming a just character of such Princes, is to draw it from their actions.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Yes, thrice; first to *Alice*, daughter of *Hugh* earl *Mor-*

Morton; 2dly, to *Avis*, heiress of the house of Gloucester, whom he repudiated, and married *Isabella Taillefer*, daughter of *Almar*, earl of *Angoulesme*.

Q. Did he leave any children?

A. He had none by his two first wives, but had five by his third, viz. *Henry*, his successor; *Richard*, earl of *Cornwal*, and King of the *Romans*; *Joan*, wife to *Alexander II.* King of *Scots*; *Isabella*, wife to the Emperor *Frederic II.* and *Eleanor*, married first to the earl of *Pembroke* and afterwards to *Simeon de Montfort*, earl of *Leicester*.

Q. What were the most remarkable events that happen'd in other countries during his reign?

A. The taking of *Constantinople* by the *French* and *Venetians* in 1204. and the crusade against the *Albigenses*, which gave rise to the inquisition.

HENRY III. surnam'd of Winchester, XXIXth King of England.

From 1216 to 1272.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
HONORIUS III.	1215	OTHO IV.	1208
GREGORY IX.	1227	FREDERIC II.	1218
CELESTIN IV.	1241		
INNOCENT IV.	1243	<i>French Emp. of Constant.</i>	
ALEXIS IV.	1254	HENRY I.	1206
URBAN IV.	1261	PETER II.	1217
CLEMENT IV.	1265	ROB. DE COURT.	1227
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		BALDWIN II.	1237
THEODORE I.	1204	<i>King of France</i>	
JOHN III.	1222	PHILIP II.	1180
THEODORE II.	1225	LEWIS VIII.	1223
JOHN IV.	1259	S. LEWIS IX.	1226
MICHAEL VIII.	1259	PHILIP III.	1270

Q. WHO succeeded *John*, surnam'd *Sans-Terre*?

A. *Henry III.* his eldest son, who was but ten years of age, and born the first of *October*, anno 1207.

Q.

Q. What steps did his subjects take, in order to set him on his father's throne?

A. His friends made very advantageous offers to the adherents of *Lewis*; and the Legate pronounc'd excommunication against those who should refuse to recognize *Henry*.

Q. Was this effectual?

A. These censures prevail'd on a great number; and the voyage which *Lewis* was oblig'd to make into *France*, in order to levy money and forces; gave the creatures of the infant King, an opportunity of winning over those of the contrary party: but the restless and fickle temper of the *English*, contributed more than all the rest.

Q. Was *Lewis* therefore entirely abandoned?

A. Yes; for as the earl of *Percbe* had lost the famous battle of *Lincoln*, the 4th of *June*, 1217; and that the succours which the illustrious *Blanche*, King *Lewis*'s consort, sent him; were intercepted in their passage into *England*; that Prince was obliged to make a treaty, by which he renounc'd all his pretensions to *England*, and thereupon he and the *French* left the kingdom.

Q. To whom was Prince *Henry* oblig'd for his crown?

A. To *William*, earl of *Pembroke*, great marshal of *England*, who caus'd him to be crown'd at *Gloucester*, the 28th of *October*, anno 1216; won the victory at *Lincoln*; and concluded the treaty of renunciation with *Lewis*; and in fine, successfully govern'd the dominions of his Pupil to his death, which happen'd in 1219.

Q. To whom was the government of the kingdom committed till he came to age?

A. *Hubert de Bourg* was made justiciary of *England*, and the bishop of *Winchester* governor of the King's person.

Q. How did these two ministers conduct themselves in the administration?

A. Admirably well, so long as they endeavour'd to carry on the affairs of the young Prince with order and justice; but the moment they endeavour'd to insinuate themselves in his favour, they quarrell'd, and *Du Bourg* who prevail'd, caus'd the bishop to be dismiss'd, in a Parliament held at *Oxford* in 1226. when the King was declar'd of age.

Q.

Q. Was not the great credit of *Du Bourg* disadvantageous to the kingdom ?

A. He was brib'd by *Q. Blanche*, regent of *France* during the minority of King *Leois* ; and twice diverted his master from crossing into *France* with an army, in order to succour the malecontents, whereof he might have made a very considerable advantage.

Q. Did he afterwards prevail in dissuading King *Henry* from it ?

A. No ; the young prince went over thither, notwithstanding all his endeavours to hinder it ; but he had no success in this expedition ; for his army perished either by hunger or sickness ; so that he return'd back into *England* without once having had a sight of the enemy.

Q. What did the *English* on this occasion ?

A. They took up arms ; forc'd the King to banish *Du Bourg*, who was now earl of *Kent*, and son-in-law to the King of *Scots*, and to restore the bishop to the administration.

Q. Did this prelate conduct himself better than his predecessor had done ?

A. Much worse ; and the *English* being exasperated when they saw that he fill'd up all places of trust with none but foreigners, rebelled a second time ; cut to pieces the forces which the king sent against them ; obliged even himself to fly, and at last forced him to send the bishop into *Anjou*, from whence his family originally came.

Q. Did the removal of the bishop put a stop to the insurrection ?

A. Yes ; but it soon broke out again ; for the King, in 1236, having married *Eleonora* of *Provence*, his court was by that means fill'd with foreigners, on whom the greatest posts were bestow'd ; but the *English* being displeased at this partiality, combined together against the king.

Q. Who were the chiefs of this league ?

A. *Richard de Clare* earl of *Gloucester*, and *Simon de Monfort* earl of *Leicester*.

Q. What action did these confederates perform ?

A.

A. They seiz'd upon the King's person; oblig'd him to lay down the sovereign authority, and to lodge it in twenty-four commissioners, call'd *Conserwators*, whom they nominated, and twelve who were appointed by the court.

Q. What steps did *Henry* take in order to recover his liberty?

A. He implored the succour of King *Lewis*; but the troops which that pious monarch sent him in 1262, not being strong enough to vanquish the confederates, both sides chose him for umpire.

Q. In what manner did this second *Solomon* decide this difference?

A. Being arriv'd at *Amiens*, where *Henry* himself was come to plead his cause, the chiefs of the confederates endeavour'd to justify their proceedings; but *Lewis* gave sentence, that *Henry* should resume all the supreme authority into his own hands; nevertheless with this proviso, that no prejudice should thereby incur to the privileges of *Magna Charta*.

Q. Was this sentence executed?

A. No; so that both sides took up arms; but King *Henry* lost the battle of *Lewis*, in 1269; and was taken prisoner, as also his son, his brother, and his nephew.

Q. How did the earl of *Leicester* dispose of these illustrious captives?

A. He shut up prince *Edward* King *Henry's* son, and prince *Henry*, son to *Richard*, the King's brother, in *Dover* castle; confin'd the King of the *Romans* in the tower of *London*, kept the king with him, and carry'd him, as it were, to grace his triumph, through all the cities of the kingdom, and seiz'd upon the sovereign authority in the king's name.

Q. Did matters continue long in this state?

A. During a year; at the end of which *Edward* escap'd out of prison; rais'd a body of troops; when he encounter'd the earl at *Evesham* on the 5th of *August* 1265; there the earl lost the battle and his life, as also one of his sons; and by this means restored the King his father to his liberty.

Q. Did this victory put an end to the confederacy?

H

A.

A. *Guy* and *Simon*, sons to the earl of *Leicester*, supported this faction for five or six months in the heart of *England*, but they afterwards came to a treaty; and in execution thereof, they laid down their arms and quitted the kingdom.

Q. Was the league quite at an end?

A. No; some of the confederates fortified themselves in the isle of *Ely*, where they continued till 1268, when prince *Edward* forced them to submit to the king his father; and the earl of *Gloucester*, son to the chief of the league, surrender'd up *London* in 1270.

Q. Was *England* free from insurrections after this surrender?

A. Yes; and the royal authority was settled on so firm a basis, that prince *Edward* thought he might securely make a voyage into the *Levant*; where, being arrived, he prevented sultan *Bendocdar* from making himself master of those places which the christians still possess'd.

Q. Did not King *Edward* wage war with King *Lewis*?

A. He cross'd into *France*, in order to assist the earl de *la Marche* his brother by the mother's side; but King *Lewis* defeating him at *Taillebourg* and *Xaintes*, he laid down his arms.

Q. Did this prince perform no other memorable action?

A. In 1260 he went to *Paris*, in order to ratify this fatal treaty, by which King *Lewis* restored him *Querci*, *Agenois*, *Perigord*, and *Xaintonge*, under the title of the dukedom of *Guienne*.

Q. Wherefore was this treaty fatal to *France*?

A. As it occasioned several wars, which reduced the *French* to the utmost straits, insomuch, that the *English* had like to have possess'd themselves of all *France*.

Q. Where did King *Henry* die?

A. In the city of *London*, the 16th of *November* 1272, in the 66th year of his age.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. In 1236 he married *Eleanor* of *Provence*, by whom he had nine children, whereof five died in their in-

infancy, but two sons and two daughters liv'd to years of maturity.

Q. What were their names?

A. Edward, who succeeded him; Edmund earl of Lancaster, to whom Pope Innocent IV. who was for dispossessing the house of Suabia of the throne of Sicily, gave the investiture of that kingdom; but the nobles having refus'd to furnish money for that purpose, this grant was of no effect. Margaret, the eldest of his two daughters, marry'd Alexander III. King of Scots; Beatrix the second, John duke of Britany.

Q. What was the character of King Henry III?

A. He was a prince of great piety; very charitable and just; had some clemency; was brave in the first emotions; after which he sunk into softness, fear and irresolution. He suffer'd himself to be too much govern'd, and this occasion'd all the calamities of his reign, which lasted 56 years and 20 days.

EDWARD, *sirnam'd* Long-shanks, XXXth King of England.

From 1272 to 1307.

Popes.		CLEMENT V.	
GREGORY X.	1271	<i>Emperors of the East.</i>	1305
INNOCENT V.	1276	MICHAEL VIII.	1259
ADRIAN V.	1276	ANDRONICUS II.	1283
JOHN XXI.	1276	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
NICHOLAS III.	1277	FREDERIC II. *	1273
MARTIN IV.	1281	RODOLPHUS I.	1273
HONORIUS IV.	1285	ADOLP. of Nassau	1292
NICHOLAS IV.	1288	ALBERT I.	1278
CELESTIN V.	1294	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
BONIFACE VIII.	1294	PHILIP III.	1270
BENEDICT X.	1303	PHILIP IV.	1285

* After the death of Frederick, there was an *interregnum* in the empire till Rodolphus; during which the following princes either reign'd or were elected; viz. Conrad III. William earl of Holland, Richard earl of Cornwall, this king's uncle; Edward IV. and Alphonso of Castile.

Q. WHO succeeded Henry III?

A. Edward I. of the line of *Plantagenet*, surnamed *Long-shanks*, his eldest son.

Q. Where was he when his father died?

A. In *Syria*, which he left six days after the news was brought him; when he took *Rome* in his way, and afterwards came into *France*, where he reconcil'd some disputes which he had with *Philip the bold*; forc'd *Gaston* prince of *Bearn* to leave off molesting his subjects, and went over into *England*, where he was crown'd the 19th of *August* 1274; *Alexander III.* King of *Scots*, and *John* duke of *Britany* his brothers-in-law, being present at it. Historians relate, that at this solemnity five hundred horses were suffer'd to run loose about the country, with liberty to all those who could catch them, to keep them.

Q. Which were his first enterprizes?

A. He declar'd War against *Leoline* prince of *Wales*, for having refus'd to assist at the ceremony of his coronation, and excus'd himself from paying him homage.

Q. What success had he in it?

A. *Leoline*, although a brave and experienc'd captain, was nevertheless defeated; was dispossest of his strong holds, and oblig'd to submit to the Conqueror, who receiv'd him with the utmost civility and complaisance.

Q. Did the *Welch* enjoy peace for any time?

A. *David*, brother to *Leoline*, resided in King *Edward's* court, who paid him the utmost regard; but so great was his love for liberty, that he fled into *Wales*, and prevail'd with all the inhabitants of that country to take up arms, when they put all the *English* to the sword.

Q. What did *Leoline* do on this occasion?

A. He found an opportunity of making his escape, after which he levied an army; but as he was marching with a body detach'd from it, he fell into an ambuscade, where he lost his life in 1281. *David*, after having defended himself from the time, was taken prisoner, and beheaded by the King's order.

Q. Had these princes any successors?

A. No; for *Edward* seiz'd upon the whole country, and

and knowing that a foreign government was very obnoxious to the *Welsh*, he obliged his queen, who was six months gone with child, to go and lie-in among them; accordingly she was there deliver'd of King *Edward II.* who was the first prince of *Wales*; and the eldest sons of the Kings of *England* have ever since bore that title.

Q. What other memorable actions did *Edward* perform?

A. *Alexander III.* King of *Scots* being dead; princess *Margaret* his grand-daughter, who a little before had been promised to the prince of *Wales* his son, having surviv'd him but a few months; *Edward* was chosen umpire between *Robert Bruce* and *Baliol*, who both laid claim to the crown.

Q. In whose favour did he declare?

A. In favour of *John Baliol*, who did him homage after his coronation, pursuant to the promise he had made King *Edward*, in order to engage him to declare in his favour.

Q. How did the *Scots* take this his mean condescension?

A. Very ill; and *Baliol* himself was so ashamed of it, that he only sought an opportunity of repairing it publicly.

Q. Did any one present itself?

A. The war, in which King *Edward* was personally engaged in *France*, was very favourable to him; but a truce was concluded, very unseasonably for him; the return of King *Edward* into *England*; the desertion of *Bruce*, who left him in the heat of engagement, reduced his affairs to so low an ebb, as forced him to come in person to sue for pardon of the conqueror.

Q. Did he obtain it?

A. *Edward* seiz'd him, and confin'd him in the tower of *London*; after which he conquer'd all *Scotland*, and made it a province of *England*, and loaded it with grievous taxations, and left very strong garrisons in it; however all this could not secure him the conquest thereof.

Q. For what reason?

A. One *William Wallis*, a soldier of fortune, rais'd a
H 3 body

body of troops, and gain'd several victories over the *English*; by which means he dispossessed them of several strong holds, and gain'd such a reputation in that nation, that the prime nobility follow'd his standards with pleasure.

Q. Did this continue for any time?

A. No; these noblemen calling to mind a little after, that he was of less noble extraction than they, were for dividing the command; and at last they carry'd their disputes to such an height, that it was impossible to reconcile them, notwithstanding that a victorious army, headed by King *Edward* himself, appear'd in sight.

Q. Did he take an advantage of this discord?

A. *John Cummin*, a *Scotch* nobleman of a very great power, deserted his countrymen just as they were upon the point to engage; whereupon *Edward* cut 70000 of them to pieces, and put the rest to flight; after which he recovered all the strong holds which *Wallis* had seiz'd, and reduc'd *Scotland* to so deplorable a condition, that he thought it would be impossible for that nation ever to shake off the *English* yoke.

Q. Was he mistaken?

A. *Robert Bruce*, son of the above-mentioned King of that name, and young *Cummin*, who both laid claim to that kingdom, concluded a treaty, in order to engage the *Scotch* to rise up in arms; upon which *Cummin* would have taken his advantage of this insurrection, tho' contrary to the promise he had made, in order to get the sovereignty into his own hands; but *Robert* hastned thither, and stabb'd him, and was afterwards crown'd in the abbey of *Schoon*.

Q. Was he able to withstand *Edward*?

A. He found it a difficult matter to do it; for having lost two battles, the one fought against the *English*, the other against the *Cummins*; he had the mortification to see himself dispossessed of his strong holds; his relations persecuted; his wife thrown into prison; so that, being universally abandoned, he himself was obliged to leave his country.

Q. Did King *Edward* make any considerable conquests during his absence?

A.

A. He possess'd himself of the most considerable strong holds; but *Robert Bruce*, after having spent several months in the woods and forests, where he liv'd only on such herbs as they spontaneously yielded; went afterwards into one of the *Ebrides*, or western islands; where one of his friends gave him a small body of forces, with which he enter'd *Scotland*, surpriz'd *Karisk*; got together his adherents, and was marching to fight *King Edward*, when that prince died, which gave him an opportunity of recovering all the strong holds he had lost.

Q. Was the King of *England* engag'd in no other wars?

A. Yes, against *France*, but with the same ill success; he lost all *Guienne*, which was restor'd him by treaty; and notwithstanding he had form'd a powerful alliance against *Philip*, by making a confederacy with the Duke of *Britany*, the earls of *Flanders* and *Savoy*, *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, Emperor elect; and *Albert* Duke of *Austria*; he yet had the dissatisfaction to see it come to nothing, and without the least advantage to himself, and to be of no other use than to heighten the glory of his antagonist.

Q. What is *King Edward's* character?

A. He was an excellent king, a good father, a faithful ally, a formidable enemy, a brave captain; he was chaste, just, moderate and pious; and so great was the affection he bore to the *Holy-Land*, that he gave orders for the carrying of his heart thither after his death, and left thirty two thousand pounds sterling for the maintenance of the holy sepulchre: but he was justly blam'd for being over ambitious, and insatiably desirous of possessing several kingdoms. And he was so flush'd with his own merits, that, in his expiring moments, he exhorted the King his son, to continue the war with *Scotland*, and added, *Let my bones be carried before you; for I am sure the rebels will never dare to stand the fight of them.*

Q. Where did king *Edward* die?

A. In *Borough on the Sands*, in *Scotland*, the 7th of July, anno 1307, after having reigned 34 years, 7 months,

months, and 21 days, and lived 68 years. He had enjoy'd an almost uninterrupted state of health; was very strong and vigorous; but a dysentery, or bloody-flux, brought him to his end. His body was carry'd to *Waltham*, and from thence to *Westminster-abbey*, where it was crufted over with wax, and laid near that of King *Henry* his father.

Q. How many times was King *Edward* married?

A. Twice; first to *Eleanor* of *Castile*, by whom he had four sons and nine daughters: *Edward II.* his successor, was the only son who surviv'd him. *Eleanor* was married to *Henry* Duke of *Bar*; *Joan* to *Gilbert* *Clare*, earl of *Gloucester*; *Margaret* to *John* Duke of *Brabant*; *Elizabeth* to *John* earl of *Holland*; *Berengera*, *Alice*, *Blanch* and *Beatrix* either died in their infancy, or were never married. By *Margaret* of *France*, King *Edward II.*'s wife, he had *Thomas* earl of *Norfolk*, and high-marshal of *England*; *Edmund* earl of *Kent*; and *Eleanor*, who died in her infancy.

EDWARD II. XXXIst. King of England.

From 1307 to 1326.

Popes.		HENRY VII.	1308
CLEMENT V.	1305	FREDERIC III.	1314
JOHN XXII.	1316	Kings of France.	
Emperor of the East.		PHILIP IV.	1285
ANDRONICUS II.	1278	LEWIS X.	1314
Emperors of the West.		PHILIP V.	1316
ALBERT I.	1278	CHARLES IV.	1322

Q. WHO succeeded *Edward I.*?

A. *Edward II.* his eldest son, by Queen *Eleanor* of *Castile*, countess of *Ponthieu*.

Q. When did he begin his reign?

A. In 1307; he was one of the most handsome and best shap'd men of his age; and had so majestick an air, that it was impossible to look upon him, without having at the same time an esteem for him.

Q. Did the beauties of his mind answer to those of his body ?

A. No ; he was neither a warrior, a politician, zealous for his country's good, or passionate of glory ; he had not a capacity for difficult affairs ; had neither a genius sufficient to concert, or resolution to go through with them ; and to these were wholly owing all the misfortunes of his reign.

Q. In what manner ?

A. He devolv'd the whole administration of affairs upon his favourites.

Q. What did his father require of him in his dying moments ?

A. To marry *Isabella of France*, daughter of *Philip le Bel*, who was the greatest beauty of her age.

Q. Did he obey him ?

A. No sooner was he seated on the throne, than he went immediately to *Boulogne* to conclude the marriage, which accordingly was solemnized in presence of four Kings, namely, *Philip King of France*, *Lewis King of Navarre*, *Charles King of Sicily*, and the King of the *Romans*.

Q. How did he conduct himself in the beginning of his reign ?

A. He was wholly at the devotion of *Gaveston*, a gentleman of *Gascogny*, whom the King his father had banish'd ; when he intrusted him with the whole administration, and was so lavish of his bounties to him, that the *English* enrag'd at the weakness of the sovereign, and the haughtiness of the minister, forc'd King *Edward* to banish him in 1310.

Q. Did he not recall him ?

A. Yes, the year following ; however he was oblig'd to banish him a second time ; but returning again, the whole kingdom rose up in arms, when he was besieg'd in *Scarborough*, taken prisoner, and there lost his head, in spite of whatever the King could do to save him.

Q. Did his death put an end to the troubles ?

A. The *English* addressing themselves to the King in person, they oblig'd him to ratify the privileges of *Magna Charta*, and the statute made by the Parliament

at

at *Oxford*, by which all foreigners were disabled from enjoying any place of trust.

Q. Was not the kingdom at that time troubled with foreign wars?

A. That of *Scotland* was still carrying on, and *Robert Bruce* had defeated the armies which had been sent against him; by which means he recover'd those strong-holds which the *English* possess'd in his kingdom, and was actually besieging *Sterling*, when the confederates sheathed their swords, and forbore all hostilities.

Q. Did not King *Edward* invade them in his turn?

A. He march'd at the head of an army of an hundred thousand men, in order to raise the siege of *Sterling*, but *Bruce* meeting with him near *Bannock-bourn*, with a body of forces but half as numerous, he defeated him entirely, and put him to flight.

Q. Did not the *English* revenge themselves?

A. The name of *Robert Bruce* was now so terrible to them, that he conquer'd where-ever he engag'd them; and recovering *Berwick*, he afterwards put all the *English* provinces, which were contiguous to his dominions, under contributions; secur'd his crown, and gave a general peace to his kingdom.

Q. Did King *Edward* enjoy a calm for any time in his court?

A. No; for in a Parliament held in *London*, in 1312, the *English* nobles put *Hugh Spencer* the younger, near his person, in quality of Chamberlain; who soon gain'd so much credit, as to become the King's favourite and prime minister; which raising the jealousy of the courtiers, gave occasion to a great many disorders.

Q. Had they any just reasons for complaint?

A. No minister had ever manag'd the administration with better success; for he never took one step without first consulting his father, who was a man of great moderation, and very well skill'd in politicks.

Q. What pretence did they then make use of?

A. They complain'd that young *Spencer* was grown haughty, and treated them with too much pride; but the real motive of this division was the jealousy of the earl of *Hereford*, who wanted to possess an estate which

Spencer

Spencer had purchas'd; this was motive sufficient for them to form a confederacy, of which *Thomas* earl of *Lancaster*, a prince of the blood, declar'd himself chief.

Q. Was this confederacy successful?

A. *Spencer* was at first oblig'd to leave the kingdom, but afterwards returning back, he artfully made his advantage of the division of the confederates, and pursued those so close who refused to submit, that they were oblig'd to venture a battle, which prov'd fatal to them; the earl of *Lancaster* was taken prisoner in it, with twenty two barons, who were all beheaded by the King's order.

Q. Did these severities put a stop to the factions?

A. For a season; but the queen imagining that the favourites had been the cause of her being sent away, and all the uneasiness which the King gave her; formed a party, and openly levied a body of troops, in order to crush them.

Q. Where was she at that time?

A. At the court of *Charles the Fair* her brother, King of *France*, whither she had carry'd her son *Edward*, who did homage to his most christian majesty, for *Guienne* and *Ponthieu*.

Q. What did the favourites do in order to cross the queen's designs?

A. They obliged the King to recal her; corrupted the *French* ministers, who refused the queen the succours they had promised her, and would have forced her to return to *England*.

Q. Did they succeed?

A. No; for the queen withdrew to *Hainault*, to earl *William* her father-in-law, who gave 3000 men, under the command of earl *John* her brother.

Q. What success had she with these forces?

A. She landed in *England*, when the conspirators joined her, after which they defeated the forces which the *Spencers* sent against her; took both of them prisoners, and seized on the King her husband: but this afterwards gave her no small uneasiness.

Q. Why so?

A. The *English* having their sovereign in their hands, threw him into prison, and in spite of the urgent solicitations of the queen and prince *Edward* his son, they resolved

resolved to crown the prince, and to force the King to abdicate the throne voluntarily, protesting, that in case he refused to comply with them, they would force him to it.

Q. Would the King consent to it?

A. The deputies had no sooner told him the resolutions of the assembly but he fainted away; and afterwards shedding a flood of tears, he submitted to every thing they required of him.

Q. What became of him afterwards?

A. They let him remain in prison, where *Thomas Gourney* and Sir *John Maltravers* gave him the most unworthy treatment; but afterwards finding that the queen seem'd inclin'd to a reconciliation, and that several parties were forming in order to set him at liberty, they put him to death in a very cruel manner: for a hot iron was thrust into his fundament, through a pipe made of horn, in order that it might leave no scar behind it, and in these cruel torments he expir'd on 29th of *January* 1326, after having reign'd 26 Years.

Q. What became afterward of his enemies?

A. The two wicked wretches, who had perpetrated this murder, came to an untimely end; *Gourney* dy'd by the hands of the hangman, and *Maltravers* perished for want; the earl of *Kent*, the King's brother, was beheaded by order of young King *Edward*, a few days after his father's murder; *Roger*, who seem'd to be the soul of the confederacy, was beheaded in *London*, for having accused the earl of *Kent* unjustly of embezzeling the publick treasure; and the queen, who was suspected to have had an unlawful commerce with *Mortimer*, was banish'd to one of her country houses.

Q. What issue did King *Edward* leave behind him?

A. He had by *Isabella* of *France* his wife, two sons and as many daughters, viz. *Edward III.* his successor, and *John* who died in the flower of his youth. *Joan* his eldest daughter, was married to *David* King of *Scots*; and *Eleanor*, his second wife to *Reynold* duke of *Gueldres*.

Q. What remarkable events happen'd in his reign?

A. The most dreadful earthquake that had ever been known in *Great-Britain*; and about this time the order of the *Knights-templers* was abolish'd.

EDWARD III. XXXII^d *King of England.*

From 1326 to 1377.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
JOHN XXII.	1316		
BENEDICT XII.	1334	FREDERICK III.	1314
CLEMENT VI.	1342	LEWIS IV.	1330
INNOCENT VI.	1352	CHARLES IV.	1347
URBAN V.	1362		
GREGORY XI.	1370	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>			
ANDRONICUS II.	1283	CHARLES IV.	1322
ANDRONICUS III.	1332	PHILIP VI.	1328
JOHN V.	1341	JOHN I.	1353
JOHN VI.	1355	CHARLES V.	1364

2. **W**HO succeeded *Edward II*?*A.* *Edward III.* his son, a youth of 14 years of age, who succeeded him in 1326.

2. What character is given of him?

A. He was a prince of the highest merit; the greatest captain, and the most happy monarch of his age; he had a great soul, an elevated genius, an inexhaustible fund of sagacity, was moderately pious, but too ambitious and haughty in the prosperity with which he was attended.

2. What were the first remarkable incidents in his reign?

A. He found it a difficult matter to crush the different factions which were form'd in the kingdom, in order to restore the king his father to the throne. *Robert Bruce* taking advantage of these troubles, enter'd *England* with an army, which, as it had been us'd to conquer, was the more formidable upon that account.2. Did *Bruce* gain any considerable advantages?*A.* He not only obliged king *Edward* to renounce all his pretensions to *Scotland*, but concluded a peace with
I him;

him; and, to make it the more lasting, *David*, eldest son of *Bruce*, and heir apparent of his crown, marry'd *Joan* king *Edward's* sister.

Q. Did not the war with *Scotland* break out afresh?

A. The Lord *Beaumont*, an *English* nobleman, who had settled in *Scotland*, having been banish'd from thence in 1331, for some misdemeanours, went to *Edward Baliol*, son to king *John*; and, as he made it appear that he might easily conquer *Scotland*, this prevail'd with him to go into *England*; where being arriv'd, king *Edward* promis'd to raise a body of forces in order to oppose his brother-in-law, upon condition that he should become his vassal.

Q. What was the success of this expedition?

A. *Baliol* gain'd two compleat victories in 1332, and oblig'd young *David*, and the queen his consort, to retire into *France*; however he was afterwards just upon the point of being put to flight in his turn, had not *Edward* enter'd *Scotland*, upon pretence of getting *Berwick* restor'd, of which his grandfather had unjustly dispossessed the *Scots*, and which *Bruce* had recover'd.

Q. Was it restor'd to him?

A. No; he took it in 1333, after a long siege; and having discomfited the *Scotch* army, which was come to succour it, upon his marching further up into the country, all submitted to him. He afterwards oblig'd *Baliol* to do him homage; but being unwilling to trust him, he took him into *England*, and committed the administration of the affairs of *Scotland* to *David Cummin*, who was a greater enemy to *Bruce* than *Baliol* himself.

Q. Did not the *Scots* rise?

A. *Robert Stuart*, who was afterwards king of *Scotland*, observing that king *Edward* was pretty much taken up in his wars with *France*, caus'd *David II.* to be recall'd, who accordingly return'd into *Scotland* with a choice body of troops, march'd into *Northumberland*, and attempted the siege of *Newcastle*, but without success; however he took *Dunbar*, the plunder whereof he abandon'd to his soldiers, and was forming the siege of *Salisbury*; but he rais'd it upon the news, that the king of *England* was advancing towards him.

Q. Did king *Edward* pursue him ?

A. No ; for finding that his forces were fatigu'd, he suffer'd them to take some refreshment ; and, during that interval, he made his addreses to the beautiful countess of *Salisbury* ; but, when his army was afterwards in a condition to march, *David* had so strongly entrench'd himself, and the season was so far advanced, that king *Edward* was obliged to retire.

Q. In what manner did the war end ?

A. *David*, in the firm persuasion that king *Edward* had enough upon his hands to maintain his war with *France*, made another incursion into *England* ; but queen *Isabella*, who was regent of the kingdom during her husband's absence, putting her self at the head of an army, fought the king of *Scots*, who receiv'd three wounds, was taken prisoner, and had 20000 of his men kill'd upon the spot ; he was afterwards confin'd in the tower of *London*, but recover'd his liberty by a treaty, which put an end to this war.

Q. Upon what occasion did he make war with *France* ?

A. *Charles IV.* surnam'd the *Fair*, king of *France*, dying without male-issue, *Philip de Valois*, his cousin, succeeded him, by virtue of the *Salick* law, which at the same time excluded king *Edward* from the succession, which he claim'd in right of the queen his mother, daughter of *Philip the Fair*, and sister of *Charles the Fair*, to whom *Philip de Valois* was only cousin.

Q. Was this a just occasion ?

A. No ; for by the *Salick* law, all women are excluded the succession ; however, the kings of *England*, ever since that time, have assum'd the title and arms of the kings of *France*.

Q. What was then the motive of *Edward's* engaging in this war ?

A. Prompted by ambition, he was desirous of enjoying the crown of *France* ; but that which chiefly fix'd him in that resolution, was the haughty reception which *Philip* gave him, when he went to do him homage in *Amiens*, for *Guienne* and *Pontbieu*.

Q. What was the consequence of this war ?

A. It was fatal to *France*, where *Edward* made dread-

ful havock, and carry'd his victorious arms to the very gates of *Paris*: he afterwards, on *Saturday* the 26th of *August* 1346, gain'd the famous victory of *Cressy* over *Philip*; in which the king of *Bohemia*, the duke of *Alençon* king *Philip's* brother, upwards of 1200 knights and 32000 men lost their lives. Historians tell us, that the *English* first made use of cannon in this memorable battle, and that the *French* were not as yet acquainted with it.

Q. Did king *Edward* gain any considerable advantages by this victory?

A. He besieged *Calais*, and took it after a year's siege. *Philip* marched with an army of 200000 men, in order to succour that place; but *Edward* was so strongly entrenched, that there was no possibility even to attack him.

Q. In what manner was it taken?

A. The besieged were starv'd out; for when they capitulated, the fortifications were as entire as the first day of the siege.

Q. Did this monarch gain no other advantages over *France*?

A. Not to mention the victory which he gain'd over *Philip's* fleet, nor several cities which he took, I shall content my self with relating, that king *John*, his son and successor, having obstinately refus'd to suffer the prince of *Wales*, eldest son of the king of *England*, to draw off his troops, he thereby forc'd the young prince to come to a battle near the village of *Maupertuis*, not far from *Poitiers*, on *Monday* the 17th of *September* 1356.

Q. What was the event of this battle?

A. Very glorious for the prince of *Wales*, who entirely routed the *French*; kill'd upwards of 6000 of their men upon the spot; took king *John*, and *Philip* of *Bourbon*, his fourth son, prisoners; he also took 50 of the greatest noblemen of the kingdom, and 800 gentlemen, and confin'd king *John* and the prince his son in the tower of *London*.

Q. Did not King *Edward*, upon this victory, flatter himself with the conquest of *France*?

A. Yes; and what confirm'd him still more in it, was the revolt of *Charles le Mauvais*, King of *Navarre*.

Q. Was he successful in it?

A.

A. No; for *Charles V.*, at that time *Dauphin*, disconcerted all the great projects he had form'd, threw the king of *Navarre* into prison, and dispos'd every thing so happily, that the king of *England*, after having unsuccessfully attempted the siege of *Rheimes*, consented to a peace.

Q. Where, and on what conditions, was it concluded?

A. In the village of *Bretigni*. King *John* paid three millions of crowns of gold for his ransom, and resign'd to the *English* the entire sovereignty of *Guienne*, *Aunis*, *Xantonge*, *Angoumois*, *Aginois*, *Perigord*, *Rouerge*, *Limousin*, *Querci*, the earldoms of *Guines* and *Ponthieu*, *Boulogne* and *Calais*. I forbear to mention the remaining articles of the peace, which were sign'd the 8th of May 1360.

Q. Was it executed?

A. Yes; King *John* was set at liberty, after having been detain'd four years, one month, and five days; he observ'd the most minute articles of the treaty, notwithstanding the offence he thereby gave to his subjects; and even went into *England*, in order to settle certain controverted points between him and king *Edward*, and dy'd the 8th of April 1364.

Q. Did *Charles V.* observe the articles of peace as faithfully?

A. No; for he made war upon king *Edward*, which prov'd as fatal to that king, as the foregoing had been advantageous; for the wise monarch vanquish'd him in several battles, tho' he did not once stir out of his palace, and drove them out of most of the strong holds they possess'd in *Picardy* and *Guienne*.

Q. Was king *Edward* engag'd in no other wars?

A. He espous'd the interests of *John* earl of *Montfort*, against *Charles* of *Blois*; and tho' he was not so happy as to put an end to that war, when he went over into *Britany*, he yet had the satisfaction to see it concluded agreeable to his wishes; for *Charles* lost this victory, together with his dukedom and his life, in the battle of *Avrai*, fought the 29th of September 1364.

Q. What is particularly ascrib'd to *Edward*?

A. The institution of the order of the *Garter*, the most illustrious in *England*.

Q. Is the occasion of it known?

A. 'Tis said that it was occasioned by the countess of *Salisbury's* blue garter, which, falling from her leg, the king took up in a ball, as that lady was dancing; but as she imagin'd he had some other design in view, and having discover'd her surprize to him upon that account, the king cry'd, *Dis honour, or evil, to that man who thinks ill of it*; and afterwards added, *Many a man has laugh'd at the garter, who will think it a great honour to wear it*.

Q. Did he institute this order immediately upon this incident?

A. No; some years after, at his return from a victory which he gain'd over a small body of *French*, who were going to take *Calais* by surprize: and the sole motive of his instituting it, seem'd at first only to reward the bravery of those who accompanied him in this expedition, and had signaliz'd themselves in the battle of *Cressy*, where the word was, *St. George and the Garter*.

Q. Pray give some account of his family?

A. He had by *Philippa* of *Hainault*, *Edward* prince of *Wales*, surnam'd *The Black Prince*, the most valiant hero of his age, who had a very great share in the victory of *Cressy*; took king *John* prisoner in the battle of *Poitiers*: and, his father bestowing on him the government of his foreign dominions, he signaliz'd himself therein by a thousand illustrious actions; he went into *Spain* in order to succour *Peter the Cruel*, and beat *Henry de Trastamare*, who disputed the crown with him; and, after having gain'd immortal glory, dy'd in the flower of his age in the year 1376.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Yes; with *Joan* his cousin, daughter of *Edmund* earl of *Kent*, widow of *Thomas* earl of *Holland*: the king his father thought it but just, in consideration of the great services the prince had done him, to permit him to marry her, he being passionately in love with her; and, so exquisite was her beauty, that she was generally call'd, *The beautiful Joan*.

Q. Had he any children by her?

A. *Richard*, who succeeded to the crown of *England*.

Q. Who are the other children of king *Edward III*?

A. He had twelve in all by his queen, whereof some dy'd before him; *William* who dy'd an infant; *Lionel* duke of *Clarence*; *John* of *Gaunt* duke of *Lancaster*; *Edmund* duke of *York*; *Thomas* duke of *Glocester*; and 4 daughters, viz. *Isabella*, *Joan*, *Blanche* and *Margaret*.

Q. In what manner did *Edward III*. die?

A. Suddenly in his palace at *Sheen*, now call'd *Richmond*, seated on the river *Thames*, the 21st of *June* 1377, in the 65th year of his age, and the 51st of his reign.

Q. Did not *Wickliffe* live under his reign?

A. Yes; and he being convinc'd of the falseness of the doctrine of the real presence, pilgrimages, purgatory, &c. inveigh'd in all his sermons against the clergy; for which being cited to appear before the bishop of *London*, it prov'd the occasion of great tumults. *Wickliffe* was a man of great piety and learning, but, in an assembly held at *Oxford*, his tenets were solemnly condemn'd; however, he escap'd the malice of his enemies, and died peaceably in his bed in 1385; he is justly consider'd as one of the most eminent authors of the reformation.

RICHARD II. XXXIII^d King of England.

From 1377 to 1399.

Popes.		Emperors of the West.	
GREGORY XI.	1370	CHARLES IV.	1347
URBAN VI.	1378	WENCESLAUS.	1378
BONIFACE IX.	1389	Kings of France.	
Emperors of the East.		CHARLES V.	1364
JOHN VI.	1355	CHARLES VI.	1380
EMANUEL II.	1391		

Q. WHO succeeded King *Edward III*?

A. *Richard II*. his grandson, born at *Bordeaux* the 6th of *Jan*. 1366, declar'd prince of *Wales*

in 1376, and crown'd king in 1377, at eleven years of age. 'Tis at this coronation that historians first mention the champion's coming into *Westminster-Hall*, and giving his challenge; however it is certain that it is of greater antiquity.

Q. Who govern'd the kingdom during his minority?

A. The duke of *Lancaster*, and the earl of *Cambridge*, afterwards duke of *York*, his uncles; who being ambitious of preserving the sovereign authority in their own hands, were continually exclaiming against his government, and spurring up the people against his ministers and favourites.

Q. Who were his chief ministers?

A. *Robert de Vere*, earl of *Oxford*; whom *Richard* created duke of *Ireland* and marquis of *Dublin*; but he being remov'd, the earl of *Suffolk* succeeded him in the administration.

Q. What memorable action did he perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. He curb'd the insolence of the peasants, who had made an insurrection; forc'd the *Scots* to forbear hostilities; sent succours to the *Flemmings*, after the battle of *Rosebec*; gain'd several victories in *Ireland*; and concluded a treaty with *France* for thirty years, after having carried on the war in that kingdom with little success.

Q. Had he no troubles during his reign?

A. Yes; for, not to mention those which the followers of *Wickliffe* rais'd in *London* and other places, the dukes his uncles, him of *Glocester* in particular, were almost continually in arms against him.

Q. What reasons did those princes give for their acting in this manner?

A. The uneasiness they felt to see persons of obscure birth in those seats which they ought to have held in the council: and, to justify their proceedings, they gave out that the favourites had secretly conspir'd to take away their lives.

Q. What was the result of these factions?

A. They brought the kingdom to the brink of ruin, and occasion'd the death of several noblemen; for the king,

king, having notice of the secret practices which the duke of *Glocester* was carrying on against him, caus'd him to be strangled; the earl of *Arundel* was beheaded; the earl of *Warwick* was condemn'd to perpetual imprisonment; and the earl of *Derby*, duke of *Lancaster*, son to the duke of that name, was banish'd the kingdom.

Q. Did this put a stop to the insurrection?

A. No; for *Derby*, who was withdrawn to the court of *Charles VI*, was recall'd by the *English* nobility, in order to head the malecontents, who were resolv'd to bear no longer with the king's lavishness and profusion.

Q. Had *Derby* the courage to head them?

A. The duke of *Britany* having furnish'd him with troops and ships, he set out from *Vannes* in the beginning of *June*, and arriv'd safe at *Plymouth*, where he was receiv'd as an angel who was come to deliver them.

Q. Was not he oppos'd?

A. *Richard* was then in *Ireland*, and the duke of *York*, at that time regent, being a lover of ease, grew tir'd with the fatigues of war; and 'tis farther said, that he went over to the earl, who, at his entrance into *England*, had taken upon him the title of duke of *Lancaster*.

Q. What happen'd after this?

A. *Richard*, being return'd from *Ireland*, was seiz'd and imprison'd in the castle of *Flint*, near *Chester*; and afterwards carried to *London*, where the duke had assembled a parliament, who brought the king to his trial, and oblig'd him to abdicate his crown, by an act made the 29th of *September*, 1399, in the 22d year of the reign of this unhappy prince.

Q. Of what was he accus'd?

A. Of having oppress'd his subjects with heavy taxes; squander'd away his revenue to very ill purpose; enrich'd his favourites with the blood of his people; devolv'd upon them the whole administration, and put the duke of *Glocester* to death unjustly. They likewise told him to his face, that he was not son to the prince of *Wales*, but of a prebend of *Bourdeaux*, whose name they mention'd

tion'd to him ; consequently that he was an usurper, and unworthy of the royal dignity.

2. What became of this unfortunate prince afterwards ?

A. He was imprison'd in *Pontefract* castle in *Yorkshire*, where, according to some historians, he was murder'd by order of *Henry*, the year following, being the 33d of his age.

2. Was he ever marry'd ?

A. Yes, twice ; first to *Anne* of *Luxemburg*, sister to the emperor *Wenceslaus*, and afterwards to *Isabella* of *France*, daughter of *Charles VI* ; but had no issue by either.

2. What character do historians give of him ?

A. That he was the most handsome monarch in the world ; of an indifferent genius, kind, obliging and magnificent ; but soft, timid, and too much devoted to his favourites ; his misfortunes were owing to the ambition of his uncles, otherwise he might have been consider'd as a good king enough.

2. Did not *Wat Tyler* and *Jack Straw* occasion great disturbance ?

A. Yes ; and it was owing to the heavy burthens and oppressions with which the nobles vex'd the people, who rose in several parts of *England* ; and a collector of poll-money offering to commit violence on *Wat Tyler*'s daughter, he was so much incens'd at it, that he beat out his brains ; after which, gathering together a great multitude of people, they set themselves in battle array on *Blackheath*, whence they marched to *London*, where they committed great ravages ; but, upon a pardon being offer'd them, they went to meet the king in *Smithfield*, when *Wat Tyler* offering to lay hold of the king's bridle, he was kill'd by the lord-mayor of *London*.

*House of LANCASTER.***HENRY IV. XXXIVth King of England.**

From 1399 to 1413.

Popes. Emperors of the West.

BONIFACE IX. 1389 WENCESLAUS 1378

INNOCENT VII. 1404 ROBERT LE PET 1400

GREGORY XII. 1406 SIGISMUND 1410

ALEXANDER V. 1408

JOHN XXIII. 1410 *King of France.**Emperors of the East.*

EMANUEL II. 1391 CHARLES VI. 1380

2. **A**fter the deposing of *Richard II.*, on whose head was the crown of *England* set?

A. On that of *Henry*, earl of *Derby*, who had assumed the title of duke of *Lancaster*: he began his reign in 1399, and was called *Henry IV.*

2. Whose son was he?

A. Of *John of Gaunt*, duke of *Lancaster*, in right of *Blanche* his second wife, heir to that dukedom.

2. What character had that prince?

A. He was brave, warlike, active, liberal and magnificent; but he is blam'd for his cruelty, his ambition and insincerity, which he never scrupled to put in practice, whenever he found his advantage in it; he is also justly censur'd for having been the first prince who suffer'd hereticks to be burnt.

2. Did he sit quietly upon the throne?

A. No; his reign was a continual series of revolutions, which fill'd *England* with blood and misery: he himself indeed always triumph'd over them; but the great number of persons of quality, whom he put to death

death for having fomented these revolutions, got him the appellation of *Cruel*.

Q. Were not his subjects supported by foreign princes?

A. The Scots assisted the *Piercies* earls of *Northumberland*; but, after having been defeated in several battles, they were obliged to forbear hostilities. The *French* supported the famous *Owen Glendour*, who had engaged the *Welch* to rise, in whose country he maintain'd himself a considerable time with so much good fortune, and gain'd so many victories with an inconsiderable body of forces, that the *English* took him for a conjurer; and they were so much possess'd with this notion, that he never appear'd, but they immediately took to their heels.

Q. Did the *French* only furnish the *English* malecontents with forces?

A. They levied considerable armies, and frequently invaded *Guienne* and *Calais*, but with very little success; for the intestine divisions, which at that time raged in *France*, did not permit them to keep up an army on foot against a foreign enemy for any considerable time.

Q. Did not *Henry* foment these divisions?

A. He assisted the duke of *Orleans* with troops; which being render'd useless by the peace that was afterwards concluded at *Bourges*, and not paid by those who had employ'd them, they made dreadful havock in *Normandy*, *Touraine*, *Maine* and *Anjou*.

Q. Of what disease did *Henry* die?

A. After having been afflicted for several years with a leprosy, it at last brought him to his end, on the 20th of *March* anno 1413, the 13th of his reign, and in the 46th year of his age: but others say, that he died of an apoplexy.

Q. Had he ever been marry'd?

A. Twice; first to *Mary*, daughter of *Humphrey*, earl of *Hereford*; afterwards to *Joan* of *Navarre*, widow of *John V.* duke of *Britany*, by whom he had no issue.

Q. Had he any children by his first wife?

A. He had six, viz. *Henry V.* who succeeded him, *Thomas* duke of *Clarence*, *John* duke of *Bedford*, *Hum-*

phrey

prey duke of Gloucester ; and two daughters, namely, *Blanche* married to *Lewis the Barbed*, Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Philippa* wife of *Erric*, king of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

Q. What eminent men flourish'd under his reign ?

A. *Robert Knolles*, *William of Wickham*, *Sir Richard Whittington* lord-mayor of *London*, were distinguish'd by their works of charity, and the foundations they made, so beneficial to the publick. It was also famous for *Geoffry Chaucer* and *John Gower*, both poets, who are generally look'd upon as the first reformers of the *English* language.

HENRY V. XXXVth King of England.

From 1413 to 1422.

Popes. Emperor of the West.

JOHN XXIII. 1410 SIGISMUND 1410

MARTIN V. 1417

Emperor of the East. King of France.

EMANUEL II. 1391 CHARLES VI. & VII. 1380

Q. WHO succeeded Henry IV ?

A. *Henry V.* his eldest son, born in 1388, and declar'd prince of *Wales* in 1399, i. e. heir apparent of the crown of *England*.

Q. When did he begin his reign ?

A. In 1413.

Q. Describe me the person and qualities of this monarch ?

A. He was well-shap'd, and warlike ; an experienc'd soldier, and a good politician ; had a very extensive and elevated genius, ever fruitful in great projects ; to which we must add, that he laid all his schemes so justly, that they never fail'd of success. He is indeed blam'd for his unbounded ambition, his sordid attachment to his interests, and for having no regard for religion.

Q. What were the pretensions of this prince ?

A. He laid claim to *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Maine*, and *Poitou* ;

Poitou; and asserted the right which *Edward III.* had laid to the crown of *France*.

Q. What methods did he first employ for that purpose?

A. That of negotiation; and accordingly address'd himself to *Charles VI.* king of *France*, in order to obtain a resignation of the abovemention'd provinces in his favour, as also princess *Catharine* in marriage; but this not succeeding, he declar'd war with *France*.

Q. Where did he first begin it?

A. He landed an army in *Normandy* the 4th of *August* 1415, besieg'd *Harfleur*, which he took in 36 days from the first opening of the trenches. During the siege above half his forces were either cut to pieces by the *French*, or died by various diseases.

Q. Where did he go afterwards?

A. He march'd thro' *Caen*, cross'd the *Somme*, and march'd on till he came near *Agincourt*, where he defeated the *French* army, which advanced to give him battle, the 25th of *October* of the same year, kill'd several *French* princes and noblemen, and 10000 common soldiers. In the heat of the action he was vigorously attack'd by the duke of *Alençon*, who, with one blow of his ax, struck off the crown which he wore upon his head. Some historians affirm, that the *English* lost only the duke of *York*, the earl of *Suffolk*, 2 knights, and 28 private men.

Q. Did *Henry* content himself with this victory?

A. After his fleet had beat that of *France* in two engagements, in the beginning of the following year, he made a descent upon *Normandy*, and seiz'd upon several cities in that province; spent the winter there, and the spring following set out in order to renew his conquests.

Q. What cities did he take?

A. *Ponté de l'Arche* and *Roan*, in 1418; the latter sustain'd a siege with as great bravery as ever was known; for the inhabitants of that great city defended themselves to the last, and would never have been overcome, had they not been prey'd upon by famine, which was so extreme, that they were forc'd to feed upon leather, on all kinds of animals, and the most loathsome things.

Q. Did not the *French* endeavour to give them speedy succour?

A. The dauphin was very desirous to do it, but his army was not strong enough to engage the enemy; he had solicited this duke of *Burgundy* to join his forces to his, but to no purpose; for the duke, who pretended to have taken up arms with no other view, than to ease the people, made no other use of them than to awe the king's forces, and facilitate the conquests of their common enemy.

Q. Did *Henry* stop here?

A. He conquer'd the rest of *Normandy* before the end of the year 1418, 229 years since the time that *Philip Augustus* had dispossessed king *John* of it, and united it to his own demesnes.

Q. Did fortune still continue favourable to him?

A. He took *Pontoise* and the whole territory of *Vexin* in *Normandy*; however, the advantage he here gain'd was vastly inferior to that which he obtain'd by the treaty concluded at *Troyes* in *Champagne*, the 21st of May 1420.

Q. Wherein was this treaty so advantageous to *England*?

A. *Charles VI.* consented, that the princess *Catharine*, his daughter, should marry *Henry*; recognize him sole heir to his crown, in prejudice of the dauphin his son; and at the same time had him declar'd regent of the kingdom.

Q. Was this treaty duly observ'd?

A. *Henry* marry'd the princess, and was recogniz'd regent, and in that quality put a garrison in *Paris*, and in several more of the chief cities of the kingdom; and notwithstanding that the dauphin strongly oppos'd his conquests, and had even defeated his troops at *Bauge*, the 22d of *March* 1422; 'tis to be presum'd that *Henry* would have maintain'd the declaration which his father-in-law had made, by force of arms, if he had not been carry'd off by a dysentery, in *Vincennes* in the 34th year of his age, and the 10th of his reign.

Q. Did *Charles VI.* survive his son-in-law for any time?

A. Fifty-two days, and his death gave a new turn to the *English* affairs.

Q. Did he leave any issue ?

A. Only one son, viz. Henry VI. whom he had by Catharine his wife; who, notwithstanding she was the widow of so great a prince, and descended from the most illustrious houses in Europe, marry'd some time after, a Welch gentleman call'd Owen Tudor, at which both the English and French were very much offended. By him she had three sons, viz. Edmund, Gasper and Owen. The eldest marry'd Margaret, daughter of John Beaufort, duke of Somerset, grandson of John of Gaunt, duke of Lancaster, and of Catharine Roet his third wife. He was father to Henry VII. as will be shewn in the sequel.

HENRY VI. XXXVIth King of England.

From 1422 to 1461.

Popes.		CONSTANTINE III.	
MARTIN V.	1417	and last Emperor.	1448
EUGENIUS IV.	1431	Emperors of the West.	
NICHOLAS V.	1447	SIGISMUND	1410
CALIXTUS III.	1455	ALBERT II.	1438
PIUS II.	1458	FREDERICK IV.	1440
Emperors of the East.		Kings of France.	
EMANUEL II.	1391	CHARLES VII.	1422
JOHN VII.	1426	LEWIS XI.	1440

Q. WHO succeeded Henry V ?

A. Henry VI. his son, being but ten months old.

Q. Where was this prince born ?

A. At Windsor in 1421: the year following he succeeded his father, and six weeks after was recognized king of France, by above half that kingdom; after, he was dethron'd in 1461, but recover'd the crown in 1471, and in 1472 lost it together with his life.

Q. What is the character of Henry VI ?

A. He was a good, just, and pious prince; and wholly resign'd himself to the sovereign dispenser of kingdoms; he bore with such uncommon patience all the sinister acci-

accidents of life, that he has hitherto been look'd upon as the best pattern for those, who are desirous of improving the worst fortune to their advantage.

Q. Who was entrusted with the administration during the minority of *Henry VI*?

A. The duke of *Bedford* was made protector, and in his absence the duke of *Glocester*; and the duke of *Exeter* and the bishop of *Winchester* were entrusted with the prince's education.

Q. In what state was the prince's dominions, upon his accession?

A. *England* and *Ireland* enjoy'd a profound peace; but *Charles VII.* exerted himself with the utmost vigour, in order to support himself upon the throne of *France*.

Q. Was he successful?

A. No; for he lost the battles of *Crevants* and *Vernuil*; and the *English* dispossest him of so many strong holds, that the only title they now bestow'd upon him was that of the *Little King of Bourges*: and we may reasonably presume, they would soon have drove him on the other side the *Loire*, had they taken *Orleans*.

Q. Did they lay siege to it?

A. Yes, in the year 1429; and, after having routed the several bodies of men that were sent to throw provisions into it, it was look'd upon as lost, when *Joan of Arc*, a young shepherdess, born in the village of *Domremy* in *Lorraine*, of 21 years of age, came to *Chinon*, where king *Charles* then kept his court, and told him, that she was expressly sent by heaven, in order to raise the siege of *Orleans*, and afterwards to carry him to *Rheims*, and cause him to be crown'd in that city.

Q. Was any credit given to what she said?

A. The king having committed her to the examination of several persons of great learning and piety, was firmly persuaded that God, the protector and father of sovereigns, had sent his delivering angel to rescue him out of the hands of the *English*; accordingly he gave the maid of *Orleans* (for by this name she is known in history) a strong body of forces, who, putting herself at their head, entirely discomfited the *English*, and entred

Orleans; after which she cut upwards of 8000 men to pieces, according to the *French* historians (tho' the *English* writers mention but 600) at the storming of several forts, which the king of *England* had built about this city, and forced him to raise the siege with great dishonour, on the 8th of *May* 1429. But this sudden defeat of the *English* is imputed to the strange frenzy and surprize with which they were seiz'd, in the thoughts that they were to encounter a witch.

Q. Did not the maid of *Orleans* continue her conquests?

A. Yes; she pursu'd the enemy close, and dispossest them of *Gergeau*, *Melun* and *Boisgenci*; she likewise defeated them at *Patay* in *Beaussé*; after which she carry'd *Charles* to *Rheims*, took all the cities that lay in her way, and was equally successful in her return; and she animated the *French* to such a degree, that they were now become as formidable to the *English* as the latter had formerly been to the *French*, and routed them in all places where-ever they dared to wait their coming up.

Q. What became of this heroine afterwards?

A. She was taken prisoner in a sally made upon the *English* in the siege of *Compeigne*; after which they carry'd her to *Roan*, where the *English* ministers condemn'd and burnt her for a witch, the 30th of *May* 1431: However, her death did not occasion the least change in the affairs of *France*, as her enemies had at first imagin'd.

Q. What measures did the duke of *Bedford* then take in order to put a stop to their conquests?

A. Being of opinion, that such of the *French*, as adhered to king *Henry*, would have a stronger affection for him, if he were crown'd king of *France*, he caused him to go to *Paris*, where the ceremony of his coronation was perform'd in the church of *Our Lady*, the 17th of *December* 1430.

Q. What farther measures did he take?

A. He raised forces in *England* and *Ireland*, and with those reinforced his army; but the duke of *Burgundy* having accommodated matters with *Charles VII.* and declaring for him after the peace was concluded at

Arras,

Arras, and the inhabitants of *Paris* having paid allegiance to their king the year following, the *English* lost ground every day; and, to compleat their misfortunes, they lost the duke of *Bedford*, a man of great bravery and experience, and very much belov'd by the soldiery.

Q. Who succeeded him in the regency?

A. The duke of *York*, who was afterwards succeeded by the duke of *Somerset*; but the latter lost all that the *English* still possess'd in *France*, by his refusing to surrender *Fougeres*, which *Francis de Surienne*, called the *Dragonis*, had surpriz'd during the treaty.

Q. In what manner was it lost?

A. All *Normandy* was conquer'd in 1450, and *Guienne* was re-united to the crown in 1462, after having been subject to the *English* for upwards of three hundred years.

Q. Did not the inhabitants of this province rise?

A. Some particular persons recalled the lord *Talbot*, the first earl of *Sbrewsbury*, an *English* general, who was received into *Bourdeaux* and certain other cities; but having been defeated and killed near *Castillon*, in 1454, every thing submitted to the *French*; and since that time the *English* have not been masters of so much as a single inch of ground in all that territory.

Q. Had king *Henry* any strong holds still left in *France*?

A. *Calais*, *Guines* and *Hames*, and their territories, continued still subject to him.

Q. Did he not labour vigorously to prevent such a series of ill success?

A. This was out of his power; he being young, unexperienced, and still under the direction of his ministers; and from the time that he took the administration into his own hands, to his being depos'd, *England* was never free from confusion and disorder.

Q. What occasion'd all these troubles?

A. The ill success of his affairs in *France*, the queen's ambition, and the pretensions of the duke of *York*.

Q. What was the name of this queen?

A. *Margaret of Anjou*, daughter of *Reyner*, titular king of *Sicily*; she was exquisitely beautiful, had a genius

nus and a capacity infinitely superior to what might be expected in a woman; to which was added a masculine bravery and intrepidity, which would have reflected honour on the most famous captains of her age.

Q. What troubles did this princess occasion?

A. Exasperated to see that the duke of *Glocester* was king in fact, while her husband bore only the title, she took the administration into her own hands, and caused the duke to be arrested; and, if the historians of that age are to be credited, he was strangled two days after his imprisonment, by her order; she afterwards made the duke of *Somerset* chief minister; a man odious to the *English*, because *Normandy* and *Guienne* had been lost at the time of his being governor thereof.

Q. Why was this change follow'd with discontents?

A. It was impossible but it must disgust great numbers of people; and *Richard*, duke of *York*, who laid just claim to the crown, made this a pretence to levy an army.

Q. Wherein did his pretensions consist?

A. He was son of the earl of *Cambridge*, beheaded for rebellion at *Southampton* in 1415, and of *Anne*, daughter and heir of *Roger Mortimer*, earl of *March*, son and heir of *Philippa*, the sole daughter and heir of *Lionel* duke of *Clarence*, second son of *Edward III.* and elder brother of *John of Gaunt*, duke of *Lancaster*, father of *Henry IV.*

Q. Do the women succeed to the crown of *England*?

A. We have already had an example thereof in the person of *Maud*; agreeable to which the *Mortimers* were justly entitled to the crown, to the exclusion of the dukes of *Lancaster*; and as the whole right of these princes was now devolv'd upon *Richard* duke of *York*, as heir to his mother, he might lawfully claim the crown of *England*.

Q. But *Henry VI.* was not an usurper?

A. 'Tis true; but then he was grandson to an usurper: however, his unwarlike genius, the calamities of his reign, and the fickle temper of the *English*, ever greedy of novelty, prompted duke *Richard* to revive a quarrel, which he had not dared so much as to mention in the two preceding reigns.

Q. Did

Q. Did his success equal the hopes with which he had flatter'd himself?

A. He defeated the king's armies in several engagements; in one of which he took king *Henry* prisoner, and obliged him to acknowledge him for his successor; but he was not able to advance any farther, because of the opposition he met with from the parliament, who propos'd this expedient, and accordingly drew up an authentick declaration thereof.

Q. What effect had it?

A. The queen refused to sign it, and getting together a body of troops, she march'd forth against the duke and his adherents; when coming to an engagement, she defeated him, in *December 1460*, killed him and his second son, the young earl of *Rutland*; and their heads were fix'd on the walls of the city of *York*.

Q. Was the duke's party ruin'd by his death?

A. The earl of *March* his son, and the brave earl of *Warwick*, got together the remains of the routed army, which they reinforced with new levies, and coming up with the queen's forces on *Palm-Sunday*, the 29th of *March 1461*, they join'd battle, and after two hours engagement the royal army was defeated and put to flight.

Q. What were the fruits of this victory?

A. *Edward*, earl of *March*, was crown'd king of *England*, in the city of *London*, the 28th of *June* of the same year.

Q. How old was king *Henry* when he was dethron'd?

A. Thirty-nine years, and about three months. He had by *Margaret* his wife only one son, call'd *Edward*, who was in the ninth year of his age when his father met with this ill fate.

WHITE

WHITE ROSE: Or,

Kings of the House of YORK.

EDWARD IV. XXXVIIth King of Eng-
land.

From 1461 to 1483.

Popes.

Emperor.

PIUS II.	1458	FREDERIC IV.	1440
PAUL II.	1464	<i>King of France.</i>	
SIXTUS IV.	1467	LEWIS XI.	1461

2. **WHAT** became of *Henry VI*?

A. He fled into *Scotland*, with the queen his consort and the prince of *Wales* his son, and there met with a very favourable reception.

2. From whom?

A. From queen *Mary of Gueldres*, regent of that kingdom, and mother of king *James III.* to whom they surrender'd *Berwick*, the better to engage her in their interests, and to obtain a body of forces, in order to recover what they had lost.

2. Did she furnish them with any?

A. Yes; and having reinforced them with two thousand men which queen *Isabella* had brought from *France*, and got together a considerable body of *English* troops, they enter'd *Northumberland* in 1463.

2. Was their enterprize successful?

A. No; they were entirely routed by the marquis of *Nevil*: In this engagement *Henry* was taken prisoner,

soner, and the queen, with the prince of *Wales*, fled for shelter into a wood.

Q. Did no unhappy accident befall them in this place?

A. They were taken by thieves, who stript them of every thing they had; but afterwards quarrelling about the division of the booty, the queen took the prince her son in her arms, and struck into the remotest part of the forest, where she had certainly died with fatigue and grief, had she not met with a peasant, who, commiserating her sufferings, conducted her to the sea-side, where a ship lay, which convey'd her to *France*.

Q. Did *Edward IV.* sit quietly on his throne after this defeat?

A. As he was persuaded that the surest method to establish himself in it, would be to make an alliance with *Lewis XI.* king of *France*, he deputed the earl of *Warwick* to demand *Bona of Savoy*, sister-in-law to that king, in marriage in his name; but just as it was upon the point of being concluded, he sent orders to the earl to break the treaty.

Q. On what motive?

A. King *Edward* having cast his eyes upon *Elizabeth de Woodville*, daughter of earl *Rivers*, and relict of Sir *John Grey*, he fell passionately in love with her, and finding it impossible for him to conquer it, he resolv'd to take her to wife.

Q. Did so unequal a match give universal satisfaction?

A. The earl of *Warwick* resolv'd to revenge himself publicly for the affront which *Edward* had put upon him; the duke of *Glocester* refus'd to recognize a queen so obscurely born; and the rest of the *English* had now the utmost contempt for *Edward*.

Q. What was the consequence of this?

A. The earl of *Warwick* and the duke of *Glocester* held a correspondence with queen *Margaret*, and the other chiefs of the house of *Lancaster*, in order to restore *Henry* to the throne; and accordingly raised an army, in the year 1470, defeated that of king *Edward*, and took him prisoner.

Q. In what manner did he make his escape?

A. He brib'd those who were appointed to guard him, and afterwards levied a stronger body of troops than

than the former; with these he attack'd the earl of *Warwick* so furiously, that he was forc'd to fly into *France*: but during his absence, his friends taking advantage of king *Edward's* remissness, who now devoted himself entirely to his pleasures, exerted themselves with so much vigour, that he cross'd the sea with all possible dispatch in order to head them.

Q. Did he meet with better success in this engagement?

A. Yes; for he forc'd king *Edward* to fly into *Holland*, and restor'd *Henry* to the throne, the 13th of *Oct.* 1470; summon'd a parliament, where *Edward* was declar'd guilty of high-treason; and in pursuance thereof both he and his accomplices were sentenc'd to lose their heads, with confiscation of all their goods and chattels.

Q. Did his affairs continue in this flourishing condition for any considerable time?

A. No; for some very weighty affairs calling for his presence in the north, king *Edward* return'd into *England*, and in a few days levied a powerful army; upon which the earl hasten'd to *London*, but coming to an engagement, he lost his life in it; when *Henry* was again imprison'd in the tower, which prov'd the last, on the 11th of *April*, 1471, and *Edward* re-ascended the throne.

Q. Was no attempt made to dethrone him?

A. Queen *Margaret* headed a powerful army, under whom the duke of *Somerset*, the earls of *Richmond* and *Pembroke*, king *Henry's* natural brother, commanded as generals.

Q. What did king *Edward* upon this occasion?

A. He advanc'd against them, and coming up with them near *Tewksbury*, defeated them entirely; the young prince of *Wales* and the queen were taken prisoners, and the former was barbarously murder'd afterwards; the duke of *Somerset* was taken and beheaded, and the earls of *Richmond* and *Pembroke* were oblig'd to fly into *Britany*, where they were seiz'd.

Q. What became of the king and queen?

A. King *Edward* barbarously sacrific'd *Henry* to his own security, in the fiftieth year of his age; and as for the queen, she was imprison'd in the tower, and did not recover

her liberty till 1475, when she went over into *France*, where she died, and was buried at *St. Maurice of Angers*.

Q. What did king *Edward* afterwards?

A. He visited all the provinces of his dominions, and caus'd upwards of fourteen hundred gentlemen, who were either impeach'd or convicted of adhering to king *Henry's* interest, to be put to death; and to compleat these bloody executions, he caus'd the duke of *Clarence*, his brother, to be drown'd in a cask of malmsey.

Q. What made him perpetrate so horrid an action?

A. For having made too free with the queen's character, according to some historians; not to mention that an astrologer had foretold king *Edward*, that a prince, whose name began with *G*, would dispossess his children of the crown; and, as the duke's name was *George*, that alone was reason sufficient for the taking of him out of the way.

Q. Are these the only memorable transactions in king *Edward's* reign?

A. He oblig'd *James III.* king of *Scots*, to surrender up *Berwick*, which *Henry VI.* had given up into his hands; after which he went over into *France* with a strong body of forces.

Q. Did he perform any remarkable action in that kingdom?

A. No; for the constable of *St. Paul* having broke his word with him, and *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* not joining him with an army, according to his promise, he was easily prevail'd with to consent to a peace, whereof *Lewis XI.* made the first overtures, and which they concluded in their interview at *Pequigni*, the 29th of *May*, 1475.

Q. How did king *Edward* employ himself after all his wars were at an end?

A. In improving the civil government; restoring things to the good order they were in before the breaking out of the wars; and in encouraging trade and all the polite arts.

Q. What were the qualities of king *Edward*?

A. Before he was king he was surprizingly active, vigilant and warlike; but he was no sooner invested

with the regal dignity, than he devoted himself wholly to his pleasures, which threw him into the profoundest lethargy, out of which he would never have awak'd, had it not been for that violent shock, which tumbled him from the throne.

Q. What do authors relate concerning his death?

A. *Philip de Comines* pretends that he died for grief that *Lewis XI.* preferr'd the alliance of the house of *Austria* to that of his family; but this is not probable: what appears most likely, is, that his indulging himself too much in an entertainment, brought him to his end. But be this as it will, he was seiz'd with a violent fever, which carried him off, the 9th of *April* 1483, in the 42d year of his age, and the 22d of his reign.

Q. What issue had he?

A. He had by queen *Elizabeth* his wife, three sons and eight daughters, whereof one son and two daughters died in their infancy; *Edward*, who succeeded him, and *Richard*, duke of *York*. His surviving daughters were *Elizabeth*, afterwards married to *Henry VII.* *Cecily*, married to the lord *Wells*; *Anne*, to *Thomas Howard* duke of *Norfolk*; *Brigit*, who embraced a monastick life; *Mary*, who died unmarried; *Catharine*, married to *William Courtney*, earl of *Devonshire*. We must observe in this reign, that in the histories of *England* there is a continual mistake in chronology of one, and sometimes two years, from 1474 to the end of it.

Q. Had not king *Edward* several mistresses?

A. Yes; but he was particularly enamour'd of three, whereof *Jane Shore* was one; the first, he said, was the merriest woman in his kingdom; the second, the most witty; and the third, the most holy, because she never stirr'd out of the church but when he sent for her.

EDWARD V. XXXVIIIth King of England.

Who reigned only two months of the year 1483.

Pope. Emp. East. King of France.
SIXTUS IV. 1471 FRED. IV. 1440 CHA. VIII. 1483.

2. WHO succeeded king *Edward IV*?

A. *Edward V.* his eldest son, who began to reign in 1483.

2. Give some account of his reign?

A. It lasted but two months; for both he and his brother were murder'd by the protector *Richard* duke of *Glocester* their uncle, who afterwards usurp'd the crown.

2. Relate the particulars of this revolution?

A. *Richard* having for some time observ'd, that it would be impossible for his brother to live much longer; he being just ready to sink under the burden of his infirmities, which his licentiousness and excess had brought upon him; set every wicked artifice at work, in order to get prince *Edward* out of the hands of earl *Rivers*, his uncle by the mother's side; and *Richard* out of those of the queen mother, who was fled for sanctuary to the abbey of *Westminster*.

2. How did he dispose of these two princes?

A. He lodged them in the tower, where the *English* kings usually resided before their coronation; when having thus got them into his power, he, to his mother's shame, who was still living, spread a report that the late king and the duke of *Clarence* his brother, were the offspring of her unlawful amours; and that, as he himself was the only legitimate son of the duke of *York*, he ought justly to succeed him: and further, that the princes, his nephews, were unlawfully begotten. or of very doubtful birth.

2. Was any credit given to what he said?

A. They either believ'd the protector, or did not dare to oppose him; for he had a very strong party, who appear'd sword in hand, by which means all his proceedings were approv'd, and the common people, fomented by the duke of *Buckingham*, the head of the party, offer'd to set the crown upon his head.

Q. Did he accept it?

A. Yes; having first made a shew as if he had been forc'd to it; after which he caus'd the young princes to be put to death.

Q. In what manner was this horrid action perpetrated?

A. The protector, upon Sir *Robert Brackenbury's*, lieutenant of the tower, refusing to be an accomplice in so barbarous a scene of villany, gave the government thereof to Sir *James Tyrrel*, for one night only; who employing one *Miles Forest* and *James Dighton* his horse-keepers, these villains, in the dead of night, enter'd the chamber where the two princes lay, and rushing upon the bed, stifled them both; after which they were buried under the stairs: but by order of king *Charles II.* their bones were remov'd, in 1674, to *Westminster-Abbey*, where a monument was erected to their memory.

RICHARD III. *surnamed Crook-back'd,* **XXXIXth King of England.**

From 1483 to 1485.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperor of the East.</i>	
SIXTUS IV.	1471	FREDERICK IV.	1440
INNOCENT VIII.	1484	King of France.	
		CHARLES VIII.	1483

Q. BY whom was k. *Richard III.* rais'd to the throne?
A. By the common people, who offer'd him the crown that *Edward IV.* had wore, which he freely accepted.

Q.

Q. Describe the person and qualities of *Richard*?

A. Altho' he be enough known by the horrid action above-mention'd, I shall nevertheless, after all the *English* historians, describe him as follows: He was little in stature, very ugly and ill-shap'd; had neither faith, conscience, or probity; was a great impostor, dissembler, hypocrite, and very cruel in his nature; but at the same time he had a great personal valour; was sagacious, profoundly skill'd in politicks, and had the utmost command over himself in concealing his intentions.

Q. Did this prince long enjoy the fruits of his guilt?

A. The duke of *Buckingham*, exasperated at his refusing him (after he had set the crown upon his head) half the lands of the house of *Hereford*, which he imagin'd was his right; he concerted with *John Morton*, bishop of *Ely*, to set the earl of *Richmond*, who was then in *Britany*, upon the throne.

Q. Was this design successful?

A. King *Richard* having discover'd the plot, pursued the duke of *Buckingham* as far as *Wales*, defeated his troops, and caused him to be beheaded.

Q. Was king *Richard* after this firmly establish'd in the throne?

A. No; for the earl of *Richmond* knowing certainly that the *English* were very desirous of having him reign over them, set out from *Harfleur* the 30th of *July* 1485, and landed at *Milford-Haven* in *Wales*, with a considerable number of *Britons*, which the duke of *Britany* had furnish'd him with, and some *Normans*, which *Charles VIII.* had sent to his assistance.

Q. Did he meet with any friends there?

A. The lord *Stanley* came with 5000 men to his assistance. With this army, which, with the succours from *France*, amounted to upwards of 12,000 men, he advanced towards king *Richard*, and came up with him near *Bosworth*, the 22d of *August* 1485; when an engagement ensuing, king *Richard's* army was defeated, and he himself lost his life in it.

Q. Was king *Richard* ever married?

A. Yes; to *Anne*, second daughter to *Richard Nevil*, the great earl of *Warwick*; by whom he had a son

named *Edward*, whom he created prince of *Wales*, and who died in *April* 1483, in the eleventh year of his age.

Q. What became of king *Richard's* body?

A. It was found among the dead, stark naked, and besmear'd with dust and blood; and being taken up, was laid cross a horse, with the head hanging down on one side, and the feet on the other, in order to be carried to *Leicester*; where it was for two days exposed to the sight of the people; after which it was buried in a church in the same city, without the least ceremony. However, some time after, *Henry VII.* caused a monument to be erected over his grave.

UNION of the Houses of YORK and LANCASTER.

HENRY VII. called Solomon, XLth King
of England.

From 1485 to 1509.

Popes.		Emperors of the East.	
INNOCENT VIII.	1484	FREDERIC IV.	1440
ALEXANDER VI.	1492	MAXIMILIAN I.	1493
PIUS III.	1503	Kings of France.	
JULIUS II.	1503	CHARLES VIII.	1483
		LEWIS XII.	1498

Q. WHO succeeded *Richard III.*?

A. *Henry VII.* surnam'd the *English Solomon*, who began his reign in 1485.

Q. What pretensions had he to the crown?

A. He had all those of the house of *Lancaster*; for his mother was become chief of that great family, by the death of *Edward* prince of *Wales*, son of *Henry VI.*
and

and to these he added the several claims of the house of York, by his marriage with princess *Elizabeth*, eldest daughter of king *Edward IV.*

Q. What were his qualities?

A. If we except his avarice, he was one of the most accomplish'd princes that every sway'd the *English* scepter; he had a solid judgment, a beneficent mind, and a genius that suffer'd nothing to escape its penetration; and he concert'd all his measures so justly, that he never fail'd of success in his greatest designs: He was brave without loving war; and lov'd peace, but upon no other terms than that it might add to his glory. He was *Mecenas* to all the learned men of his age; contributed vastly to the revival of the polite arts in his kingdom, and merited the esteem of all *Europe*.

Q. Was he belov'd by his subjects?

A. He found it impossible to obtain their affection, so that his reign was one continual series of troubles and divisions; and these were fomented chiefly by *Lambert Simnel* and *Perkin Warbeck*.

Q. Give some account of them?

A. *Simnel* was a young student of *Oxford*, and son to a baker; he was a comely person, and resembled so exactly in feature the young earl of *Warwick*, imprison'd in the *Tower of London*, that it was scarce possible to distinguish them. *Richard Simon*, a priest of *Oxford*, a man of wit, but ambitious, resolv'd to set the crown of *England* upon his head; well knowing that the *English* are very fond of novelty.

Q. What did he in order to effect it?

A. He taught *Simnel* to personate the young earl of *Warwick*; and he, being of an ambitious spirit, acted whatever part they thought proper to give him. *Simon* carried him to *Ireland*, where he was recognis'd earl of *Warwick*; when immediately great endeavours were made to raise him to the throne; the people thinking that he had laid just claim to it; and accordingly he was crown'd at *Dublin*.

Q. Was he acknowledg'd by the *Irish* only?

A. *Margaret of York*, dutchess-dowager of *Burgundy*, a sworn enemy to the house of *Lancaster*, sent him two thou-

thousand men; and the earl of *Lincoln*, son to the duke of *Suffolk*, came also in to him.

Q. Did he continue in *Ireland*?

A. Finding he had an army at his command, capable of attempting any thing, he cross'd into *England* in 1487; but the king's forces coming up with him near a village call'd *Stoke*, utterly routed his troops, in an engagement which lasted three hours. *Henry VII.* spar'd his life, and at first order'd him to serve in his kitchen, and afterwards made him one of his Falconers, in which condition he spent the remainder of his days.

Q. To return to *Warbeck*, whose son was he?

A. Of a converted Jew of *Tournay*, *John Orbeck* by name, and *Catharine de la Fare*. He was born in *England*, and possess'd his native tongue very well. He was handsome, well-shaped; had a noble air that commanded love, and persuaded the people to take him for *Richard* duke of *York*, brother of *Edward V.* who, as has been already observ'd, fell a sacrifice to the ambition of *Richard III.* his uncle.

Q. Who first put him upon acting this part?

A. The dutchess-dowager of *Burgundy*, a profess'd enemy to king *Henry VII.* who, finding that *Simnel's* imposture had met with ill success, was still resolv'd to take advantage of the fickleness of the nation, by setting up this pretended duke of *York*.

Q. What measures did she take for this purpose?

A. Finding that *Perkin* was a fit instrument for her designs, she taught him his part; and in order to remove all suspicion, sent him into *Portugal*, from whence he went into *Ireland*.

Q. Did he continue there long?

A. A war breaking out between *Henry VII.* and *Charles VIII.* king of *France*, *Charles* invited *Perkin* to his court, where he was received in quality of duke of *York*; but the only motive for his so doing, was in order to oblige the king of *England* to sign the articles of peace with greater dispatch; thereby to give him an opportunity of making a voyage to *Naples*.

Q. What became of *Perkin*?

A. He went into *Flanders*, and waited upon the dutchess

chefs of *Burgundy*, who first pretended not to know him, but she afterwards recognis'd him, and gave out publicly that he was the true duke of *York*, that the ruffians, whom *Richard III.* had sent to murder him, had given him his liberty, after they had repented for having put the prince of *Wales*, his elder brother, to death.

Q. What steps did she take in order to set him on the *English* throne?

A. She always treated him as her nephew; and, having enabled him to attempt a descent in *Kent*, he went into *Scotland*, accompanied with several *English* lords his adherents.

Q. How was this impostor received there?

A. King *James IV.* gave him an honourable reception, and one of his relations in marriage; and took him twice with him into *England*, at the head of an army; but not succeeding in his designs, he abandon'd him, and concluded a peace in 1498.

Q. Where did *Perkin* retire afterwards?

A. Into *Ireland*; where hearing, the following year, that the *Cornish* men had taken up arms, he went thither at the head of 3000 men, laid siege to *Exeter*, but fled from thence upon news being brought him that the king was advancing.

Q. Was it possible for him to escape?

A. He was so closely pursu'd, that he fled for sanctuary into a church; but came out of it upon the king's promising to spare his life; after which he was imprison'd in the *Tower of London*.

Q. Did he continue long there?

A. The king being inform'd, that he was setting every engine at work, in order to escape from thence with the earl of *Warwick*, he caused him to be hang'd, and beheaded the earl; but some writers assure us, that this young lord was sacrificed to the jealousy of *Ferdinand*, the Catholick, who refused to bestow the infant *Catharine*, his daughter, on the prince of *Wales*, so long as the earl lived.

Q. What other memorable incidents happen'd under *Henry VII.*'s reign?

A. The inhabitants of *Cornwall* made an insurrection; but

but without success; several noblemen of great power conspired against his life, for the security whereof the parliament gave him leave to keep a band of men, call'd the *Yeomen of the Guard*, about his person, tho' none of his predecessors had any such.

Q. Was he not engaged in foreign wars?

A. He would have carried on war with *France*, in order to prevent *Charles VIII.* from marrying the heir of *Britany*; and some time after the consummation thereof in 1490, he concluded an alliance with the emperor *Maximilian* and *Philip* archduke of *Austria*; and landing an army at *Calais*, he besieg'd *Boulogne*, but without success: not long after he concluded a peace with *Charles VIII.* in 1492.

Q. What was remarkable in the marriage of his son *Arthur* prince of *Wales*?

A. This young prince had espoused *Catharine*, daughter to *Ferdinand* king of *Arragon*, but 'twas pretended that their marriage was not consummated; however, several authors affirm the contrary; and among the rest, *Warham*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, who always oppos'd the marriage of this princess with *Henry VIII.*

Q. Had he credit enough to hinder it?

A. No; *Henry VII.* loved money so well, that he chose rather to give *Henry* his second son in marriage to that princess, than to part with her dowry, which amounted to two hundred thousand crowns of gold; and pope *Julius II.* gave the necessary dispensations, upon condition that it should not be consummated before the expiration of five years, by reason *Henry* was but twelve years of age.

Q. Had the remonstrances of the archbishop no effect?

A. Some writers relate, that notwithstanding the pope's dispensation, he asserted so openly that this marriage was not allowable by any laws, divine or human, that *Henry*, struck with his reasons, commanded the young prince to take an oath of the invalidity thereof before a notary, and commanded him, a little before his death, to dissolve it; but this not being approved of by the council, the marriage was solemniz'd the 25th of *June* 1509; and the opposition of the archbishop had

no other effect than to serve as a handle for the divorce, the consequence whereof was so fatal, as will be seen in the sequel.

2. Of what death did *Henry VII.* die ?

A. Of a consumption, the 22d of *April* 1509, in the 52d of his age, and the 24th of his reign; and was buried in the chapel in *Westminster-Abbey*, which he had erected with the utmost magnificence, it being looked upon as the finest structure in *England*.

2. To whom was *Henry* married ?

A. To *Elizabeth* of the house of *York*, eldest daughter of king *Edward IV.* by whom he had the following issue: *Arthur* prince of *Wales*, who died at 17 years of age; *Henry*, who succeeded him; and *Edmund*, who died at five years of age. Of four daughters, two died in their infancy; *Margaret* was married to *James IV.* king of *Scots*; and *Mary* was married to *Lewis XII.* king of *France*, and afterwards to *Charles Brandon* duke of *Suffolk*.

2. Did not a strange disease break out in his time ?

A. Yes; and it was called the *Sweating Sickness*; which, in a short time, carried off many thousands of people. In 1497 the royal palace at *Sheen* was burnt, and, being rebuilt, was called *Richmond*.

HENRY VIII. XLI^a King of England.

From 1509 to 1547.

Popes.

Emperors.

JULIUS II.	1503	MAXIMILIAN I.	1493
LEO X.	1513	CHARLES V.	1519
ADRIAN VI.	1522	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
CLEMENT VII.	1523	LEWIS XII.	1498
PAUL III.	1534	FRANCIS I.	1515

2. WHO succeeded *Henry VII.* ?

A. *Henry VIII.* his second son, who began his reign in 1509.

2. Describe his person and qualities ?

A. He was a comely prince, but grew too corpulent in

in the latter part of his life; had a great soul, an elevated genius, a sprightly and shining wit; his passion for women was extreme; and his obstinacy insurmountable; when once he had form'd a design, he very seldom laid it aside till he had executed it; and always gratify'd his revenge, tho' at never so dear a rate.

Q. Was he a great stickler for the *Roman* catholic religion?

A. No one could have discover'd more zeal for it than he did in the beginning of his reign; he even wrote against *Luther*, and this gained him the new title of *Defender of the Faith*, which pope *Leo X.* bestow'd upon him by a bull. His successors have look'd upon it as so glorious, that they have preserved it ever since their separation from the church of *Rome*.

Q. Was he always actuated with the same zeal for the see of *Rome*?

A. No; for that court having refused to give him satisfaction, with respect to the divorce, he separated himself from that church; and, after obliging his subjects to follow his example, he persecuted those who refused to do it.

Q. What do you mean by this divorce?

A. I just now observed, that he had been married to *Catharine of Arragon*, relict to his elder brother; but, after eighteen years cohabitation, she appeared unlovely in his eyes; when cardinal *Wolsey*, who sought for an opportunity of revenging himself of *Charles V.* persuaded *Henry* to divorce *Catharine*, because, as he said, the whole world exclaim'd against it; and at the same time he insinuated to him, that the pope had exceeded the limits of his power, in granting him a dispensation?

Q. How far did this divorce affect *Charles V.*?

A. He was nephew to *Catharine*, who was sister to *Joan of Arragon* his mother, second daughter of *Ferdinand V.* king of *Arragon*, and of *Isabella*, queen of *Castile*; and he so highly resented the affront which was put upon his aunt, that he sought all opportunities of revenging himself, and was partly the cause of *Henry's* being excommunicated, as we shall observe in the sequel.

Q. How did he relish the proposal which *Wolsey* made him?

A. As he was of a fickle temper, he was very much tir'd of being so long married to one woman; and therefore appointed the above-mention'd *Wolsey* to demand, in his name, of *Francis I.* the dutchess of *Alençon* his sister, who was afterwards Queen of *Navarre*.

Q. Did he obtain her in marriage?

A. Falling passionately in love with *Anne Boleyn*, he forbid the cardinal to mention a word to *Francis I.* about his sister; and at the same time he interceded with the Pope, in order to obtain a divorce from *Catharine of Arragon*.

Q. Who was Pope at that time?

A. *Clement VII.* who was thought to be a fit instrument to indulge *Henry* in his passions, because of the resentment that Pope shewed for the ill treatment he had met with from the emperor, who had imprison'd him in the castle of *St. Angelo*, after he had taken and sacked *Rome*.

Q. Did he grant him a divorce?

A. He at first gave him some hopes of it, which only enflam'd *Henry* the more: but his scruple to dissolve a marriage of eighteen years continuance, concluded by virtue of the dispensation of a former Pope, and bless'd with several children, whereof one was still living; the laws of policy and justice; the fear of angring so formidable a Prince as *Charles V.*; these several considerations, I say, prevail'd with the Pope to change his former resolutions.

Q. What course did King *Henry* take?

A. He first employ'd flattery, intreaties, menaces, money, and the credit he had with *Francis I.* and afterwards remov'd the cognizance of that affair to his own dominions; and obtain'd cardinal *Wolsey* his chief minister and favourite, and cardinal *Campejus* bishop of *Salisbury*, commissioners for the hearing of the same. But after these several steps had been taken, and his cause had been pleaded before these two prelates, both of them his subjects, without being able to obtain what he so earnestly desired, he grew tir'd with the tedious proceedings of the court of *Rome*. M Q.

Q. Did he continue to cohabit with *Queen Catharine*?

A. No; he sent her to *Kimbolton*, one of the royal palaces in *Huntingtanshire*; and was privately married to *Anne Boleyn*.

Q. Was his former marriage disannulled?

A. Yes; *Cranmer*, whom he had rais'd to the See of *Canterbury*, dissolv'd it, by a sentence pronounc'd the 23d of *May* 1533, without waiting for the sentence of the court of *Rome*; their proceedings being too slow for a prince, whose passions rag'd with so much violence.

Q. Did *Henry* stop here?

A. Not satisfy'd with having reviv'd by act of Parliament, on the 4th of *February* foregoing, the several statutes which had been made under such of his predecessors, as were no friends to the Popes; a bill pass'd, that for the future no person should appeal to the court of *Rome*, in any case whatsoever; but that they should all be judg'd within the realm by the prelates: that neither tenths, annates, or *St. Peter's pence* should be any longer paid; and that all who should presume to infringe this statute, should be severely punish'd.

Q. What temper did *Clement VII.* observe on this occasion?

A. He threatn'd *Henry* with excommunication, in case he refus'd to acknowledge and repair his fault; however *Francis I.* interpos'd his authority, and in the interview which he had with the Pope at *Marseilles*, he prevail'd with him to suspend the excommunication, till such time as he had employ'd his endeavours in order to make him return to the obedience of the holy See.

Q. Did this meet with success?

A. *Francis I.* sent *John du Bellay*, Bishop of *Paris*, to King *Henry*; *Du Bellay* intreated him, to forbear pursuing those measures to which he had been prompted by his passion, in opposition to his duty: the prelate conducted himself with so much prudence and moderation, that King *Henry* gave him some hopes of his submission, and promis'd not to separate himself from the church, provided the Pope would delay the excommunication.

Q Did this prevail with the Pope to suspend it;

A. *John du Bellay* went post to *Rome*, in order to carry this good news, where being arriv'd, he desir'd further time to work with King *Henry*, in order to make him change his resolutions, which was a matter of no small difficulty. As the partizans of *Charles V.* were not able to prevail with the Pope to refuse so just a request, they had it limited to the shortest time possible; and were so urgent to have it executed, that upon its being elaps'd, and no news coming from *England*, excommunication was pronounc'd, and set up in all the usual places.

Q What effects did it produce?

A. It was very fatal to the See of *Rome*; the Pope, who now blam'd his over-hasty proceedings, found it impossible to appease King *Henry*; for that monarch now threw off all restraint; he separated from the See of *Rome*; declar'd himself head of the church of *England*; nominated and confirm'd bishops, erected new bishopricks, took the annates and tenths, and seiz'd upon the revenues of the abbeyes.

Q What was his next step?

A. He persecuted all such as opposed his designs, and caused Sir *Thomas More*, lord high-chancellor of *England*, and cardinal *Fisher*, bishop of *Rocheſter*, who had been his tutor, to be beheaded; he likewise order'd the bones of *Thomas Becket*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, to be publicly burnt, and appropriated to himself part of the treasures of the Church.

Q Did not his subjects oppose these proceedings?

A. The laity had the utmost aversion and contempt for the clergy, and were exasperated at the honour that was shewn them at court, and in all publick assemblies; not to mention the just offence they took at the lewd and licentious lives the monks led.

Q Did not the clergy exert themselves upon this occasion?

A. The monks preach'd with great vehemence against these innovations, and the priests prevail'd upon the peasants in the north of *England* to rise; however the monks were banish'd the kingdom, and the mu-

tineers defeated; but proclamation being publish'd for a general pardon, they laid down their arms.

Q. Did not *Henry* embrace the new opinions?

A. No; he constantly adher'd to the principles of the church of *Rome*; however, he is accus'd by the members of that church, of having imbib'd the sentiments of the antient *Iconoclastes*, because he caus'd most of the statues that stood in the churches to be pull'd down.

Q. Was he engag'd in no wars?

A. He enter'd into the confederacy which Pope *Julius II.* made against *Lewis XII.* and made an incursion into *Picardy* with a powerful army.

Q. Did he perform any memorable action there?

A. Not to mention the great honour he receiv'd by entertaining the emperor in his pay, he took *Terouanne*, *Tournay*, and some other places; and triumph'd in that engagement, call'd, *The battle of the Spurs*; this was fought the 13th of *August*, 1513.

Q. Why was it so call'd?

A. Because the *French* employ'd their spurs more than they did their swords.

Q. In what manner did this war end?

A. By a treaty of peace concluded before the opening of the ensuing campaign.

Q. Was this the only war King *Henry* had with *France*?

A. Having enter'd into a confederacy with *Charles V.* in order to make war upon that nation, he went on board a vessel, the sails whereof were of cloth of tissue; landed at *Calais*, and went and laid siege to *Boulogne*, which he made himself master of, the 14th of *September* 1544, by the cowardice of *Vervins* who commanded there.

Q. Are these all the wars that King *Henry* was engag'd in?

A. The *Scotch* marching into *England*, in order to make a diversion, with an army of 60000 men, headed by their King; the earl of *Surrey*, and his son the lord *Thomas Howard*, advanced towards them with 26 or 27000 men; attack'd them at *Bloddon* the 9th of *Sept.* 1513, where they were advantageously posted, and, entirely

entirely defeated them; and *James IV.* their King, after having receiv'd many wounds, was left dead in the field of battle.

Q. Did not the *Scotch* revenge themselves afterwards for this overthrow?

A. They enter'd *England* a second time, viz. in 1542; but tho' they had the advantage in the first engagement, they sustain'd so great loss in the second, that historians relate King *James V.* died with grief upon that account.

Q. Of what disease did King *Henry* die?

A. A complication of humours falling upon an old sore in his leg, brought him to his end, on the 28th of *January*, 1547, in the 57th year of his age, and the 38th of his reign.

Q. Did he leave any issue?

A. Two daughters, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, and one son call'd *Edward*. He had the former by *Catharine* of *Aragon*; the second by *Anne Boleyn*; and *Edward*, the youngest, by *Jane Seymour*.

Q. How did he regulate the order of the succession?

A. He ordain'd by his last will and testament, that *Edward* should succeed him; that in default of his issue, *Mary* should be recogniz'd Queen; and that in case she died without children, *Elizabeth* should be advanced to the throne.

Q. How many wives had he?

A. Six; the first was *Catharine* of *Aragon*, by whom he had the Princess *Mary*, whom he at first declar'd, by act of Parliament, incapable of succeeding him; but he soon repeal'd it; he had had other children by her, but they all died young.

Q. Who was his second wife?

A. *Anne Boleyn*, by whom he had only one daughter named *Elizabeth*, who succeeded Queen *Mary*. *Anne Boleyn* was beheaded the 19th of *May* 1536.

Q. Whom did King *Henry* marry afterwards?

A. *Jane Seymour*, whom he took to wife the very next day, and had her crown'd with the utmost magnificence. This Queen being afterwards big with child, and her pains coming upon her, the physicians told the

King that they must either kill his Queen or the Child; but he chusing rather to lose the mother, they cut open her side, and drew Prince *Edward* from thence; two days after which, Queen *Jane* departed this life; viz on the 14th of *October* 1537. However the best writers are of opinion, that this relation was a mere forgery, and invented purely to blacken still more the character of King *Henry VIII.*

Q. Who was his fourth wife?

A. *Anne of Cleves*, sister to the duke of *Cleves* and *Geldres*; this lady was represented to him as one of the most beautiful women of her age; but he was so much disgusted, the first time he saw her, that he could never prevail with himself to love her, and repudiated her five months after.

Q. Who was the fifth?

A. *Catharine Howard*, a lady descended from the most illustrious, and most ancient family in the kingdom; and being a great beauty, he fell suddenly in love with her; but no sooner had he satiated his passion, than he accused her of adultery, whereof she is said to have been found guilty; and accordingly she was condemned by act of parliament to lose her head; which was executed in a publick manner, on the 12th of *February*, 1542.

Q. Who was his sixth wife?

A. *Catharine Par*, relict of the Lord *Latimer*. She was handsome, and had something so engaging and insinuating, as gain'd her universal esteem; to which we must add, that she had an extensive and penetrating genius; she embrac'd the doctrine of *Luther*, but it had like to have cost her her life.

Q. In what manner did she escape King *Henry's* cruelty?

A. Her caresses and intreaties were so prevalent, that he revok'd the order he had given to have her seiz'd, and brought to a trial; however, she would not have been secure, had not death taken away this fickle Monarch, who was now grown contemptible in the eyes of the whole world, for having brought so many of his wives to an unhappy end.

Q. Pray give some account of the birth and fate

late of those, who were the chief instruments of the divorce, and the separation of the *English* Church from that of *Rome*.

A. Wolsey, who was the first who promoted the divorce, was a butcher's son of *Ipswich*, in the county of *Suffolk*; he was a student in *Magdalen* College in *Oxford*, and afterwards master of the grammar-school there; he next had a rectory given him; then tutor to some young noblemen, afterwards dean of *Lincoln*, and chaplain to King *Henry VII.*

Q. Was he rais'd to no higher dignity?

A. Henry VIII. who had a great affection for him, put the administration of affairs into his hands; made him bishop of *Lincoln*, and afterwards archbishop of *York*, and got him elected Cardinal, as also a commission from the Pope, by which he was made Legate *a latere*.

Q. Did not so many great dignities satisfy his ambition?

A. No; he aim'd at the pontifical chair, to which *Charles V.* promised to raise him; but as that emperor fail'd to promote his interests in two conclaves, in one whereof he caus'd *Adrian*, who had been his tutor, to be elected Pope; *Wolsey* resolv'd to spite him, and for that purpose persuad'd King *Henry* to sollicite the divorce; but this afterwards proved his ruin.

Q. In what manner?

A. As Wolsey had not credit enough at the court of *Rome*, to obtain those things which he had flatter'd King *Henry* he should certainly succeed in, he grew odious to that prince; who, tir'd out with the continual complaints that were made against him, and the repeated sollicitation of *Anne Boleyn*, seiz'd all his revenues, furniture, papers, and money; which affected him so much, that he died with grief,

Q. What have you to say of *Crammer*?

A. He had formerly been a tutor in the university of *Cambridge*. He compos'd a treatise to prove, that the marriage of *Henry VIII.* with *Catharine of Arragon*, was unlawfull; he was afterwards made chaplain to Sir *Thomas Boleyn*, father of Queen *Anne Boleyn*. The sollicitations of a patron who had now such great credit at court

court, and who expatiated very much on the merits of this work, together with his great learning and piety; prevail'd upon the King to make him archbishop of *Canterbury*.

Q. Did he accept of that dignity?

A. Yes; and he afterwards disannull'd King *Henry's* first marriage. He had the bravery to excommunicate the Pope, and presided over all the affairs of the *English* clergy, during the remaining part of King *Henry's* reign.

Q. What happen'd to him under Queen *Mary*?

A. He sided with the Lady *Jane Grey* in opposition to Queen *Mary*, who being acknowledged Queen of *England*, caused him to be arrested, and condemn'd to the flames as a heretick; but he unhappily recanted, thinking by that means to save his life; however, he afterwards recover'd from his weakness, and gloriously receiv'd the crown of martyrdom. Take the following short account of his character: He was naturally of a mild and gentle temper, not soon heated, or apt to give his opinion rashly either of things or persons. He was a man of the utmost candor; was never known to dissemble his opinion, or disown his friend; two rare qualities, in that age especially. In a word, he was pious, and very charitable to the poor.

EDWARD VI. XLII^d King of England.

From 1547 to 1553.

Popes.

Emperor.

King of France.

PAUL III. 1534 CHARLES V. 1519 HENRY II. 1547
JULIUS III. 1550

Q. Which of King *Henry's* children succeeded him?
A. Edward VI. who tho' but nine years of age was nevertheless very well skill'd in the *Latin* and *French* tongues, and had some knowledge of the *Greek*, the *Spanish* and the *Italian*.

Q. To whom was the administration of affairs committed during his minority?

A.

A. To a council composed of sixteen persons, where-
of the chief was *Edward Seymour*, uncle to the King by
the mother's side, earl of *Hertford*, and afterwards duke
of *Somerset*; but he soon got all the authority into his
own hands.

Q. Did any thing remarkable happen during his ad-
ministration?

A. This nobleman, who adhered to the doctrines of
Zuinglius, which he had instill'd into King *Edward*,
with whose education he was entrusted, had no sooner
obtain'd the sovereign authority, than he approv'd of
King *Henry's* separation, and openly profess'd the *Zuin-
glian* principles, and part of those of the other reformers.

Q. In what manner?

A. As the parliament consisted of persons who were
entirely at his devotion, they examin'd the tenets of all
the reformers, and made choice of such as to them ap-
pear'd most conformable to the holy scriptures, and with
these they composed a religion, to which they gave the
name of the *Church of England*.

Q. What steps did he take in order to settle it upon a
strong foundation?

A. He abolish'd the mass; the antient form of prayer;
part of the *Romish* ceremonies; permitted the clergy to
marry, and decreed severe penalties against those who
should refuse to comply with these changes.

Q. Did not so many alterations occasion great dis-
orders in *England*?

A. 'Tis not very certain whether it was this, or the
unworthy treatment which the nobility met with; who
thereupon rais'd a rebellion in all the northern counties
in *England*.

A. Was this insurrection attended with any ill con-
sequence?

A. It was followed with the plunder of some cities,
a great number of castles, and the death of several
gentlemen; but the rebels, after having been worsted in
several rencounters, accepted of the general pardon that
was offer'd them.

Q. Was the protector engag'd in no wars ?

A. The *Scots* having refus'd to grant *Mary Stuart* in marriage to King *Edward*, she being already promis'd to the Dauphin, the protector entred *Scotland* with a powerful army ; defeated that of the Queen at *Musselburgh*, the 10th of *September* 1547, though much superior to his in number ; kill'd near 14000 men, took 1500 prisoners, whereof 800 were gentlemen ; and the better to improve this victory, he entred *Scotland*, where he took a considerable number of strong holds.

Q. Was the war carry'd on with equal success ?

A. No ; for *Henry II.* King of *France*, sent a body of forces into *Scotland*, who dispossessed the *English* of all the places they had taken, in spite of the protector.

Q. Wherefore was he unable to oppose these conquests ?

A. The court was full of Malecontents, and the provinces of Rebels ; not to mention that *France* was levying forces, and threatned *England* with a terrible war.

Q. In what manner did he put a stop to all these disorders ?

A. He suppress'd the malecontents by his authority, while the King's forces curb'd the insolence of the rebels ; and the *French* not succeeding in the siege of *Boulogne*, they consented to a treaty of peace, by which he was left in possession of that city ; it also put an end to the rupture with *Scotland*.

Q. Did success always attend upon the protector ?

A. No ; he was so unfortunate, as to have the lord *Seymour*, his brother, whom he had created high admiral, engage in a conspiracy against his own person and the government ; so that he was obliged to attain him in parliament, when he was sentenced to lose his head, which was accordingly executed the 10th of *March* 1549.

Q. Had he no other enemy ?

A. *Thomas Dudley* earl of *Warwick*, had him dismiss'd from the administration, and prosecuted him with so much vigour, that an act of parliament was made, by which he was sentenc'd to lose his head on a scaffold ; and accordingly he was executed on the 22d of *January* 1552, the King himself having sent an express order for that purpose.

Q. What remarkable actions did the young King perform during his reign?

A. He encourag'd trade, and granted large privileges to the merchants, and was consulting the best methods for establishing the reformation in *England*, when a consumption brought him to his end.

Q. When did he die?

A. The 6th of *July* anno 1553, in the 16th Year of his age, whereof he had reigned six.

Q. What were the qualities of this young prince?

A. He had a great genius, and was perfectly acquainted with the interest of his kingdom: he was happy in a sweet temper, so that he would not allow any person to be put to death upon a religious account; however, *Dudley* observing he had the reformation very much at heart, made his advantage of it, by engaging him to disinherite the princesses, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, his sisters.

Q. What view had *Dudley*, now duke of *Northumberland*, in this?

A. He intended to set his own family upon the throne.

Q. On what were his pretensions founded?

A. He had married the lord *Guilford*, his fourth son, to *Jane*, eldest daughter of the duke of *Suffolk*, whom King *Edward* declar'd his heir.

Q. What pretensions had *Jane* to the crown?

A. *Mary*, daughter to *Henry VII.* queen-dowager of *France*, took *Charles Brandon* duke of *Suffolk* for her second husband, by whom she had one daughter, who was married to *Henry Grey*, marquis of *Dorset*, and afterwards duke of *Suffolk*, to whom she brought three daughters, whereof the lady *Jane* was the eldest.

Q. Did *Dudley* succeed in his design?

A. As he knew that it would be scarce possible for him to put the King's last will and testament in execution, unless he first got *Mary* and *Elizabeth* into his hands, he order'd them, in the King's name, to come to court; but his secretary discover'd his design to the princess *Mary*, who, upon that notice, withdrew into *Norfolk*.

Q. Did this disappointment prevail with *Dudley*, to lay aside his designs?

A. No; for immediately upon King *Edward's* death

he

he publish'd his last will and testament, and caused the lady *Jane* to be proclaim'd Queen of *England*; and notwithstanding her disinclination, she was acknowledg'd Queen in *London*: but as her ambitious father was very much hated, upon the approaches of *Q. Mary's* army, the lady *Jane* was universally abandon'd.

Q. Did not one *Ket*, a tanner, occasion great disturbances in this reign?

A. He made an insurrection in *Norfolk* in 1548. where he got together 20000 men; but the marquis of *Northampton* being sent against him with only 1100 men, he drove him from *Norwich*, when the earl of *Warwick* encountering him, he was defeated, and afterwards hang'd.

MARY XLIII^d Monarch of England.

From 1553 to 1558.

Popes. Emperor.

JULIUS III.	1550	CHARLES V.	1519
MARCELLUS II.	1555	King of France.	
PAUL IV.	1555	HENRY II.	1547

Q. WHO succeeded *Edward VI*?

A. *Mary*, his sister, daughter of *Catharine of Arragon*, who, as was before observ'd, had been declar'd illegitimate; however, by his last will and testament, he declar'd her capable of succeeding to the crown, upon certain conditions therein expressed.

Q. Where was she proclaim'd Queen?

A. First at *Norwich*, and afterwards in all parts of the kingdom, in 1553, after the ruin of *Dudley* and his party.

Q. In what manner was it ruin'd?

A. *Queen Mary's* right to the crown was so indisputable, and *Dudley* was become so odious, that the whole nation declar'd for that princess; and no sooner was *Dudley* retir'd at some distance from the city, than the Lord-Mayor and the nobility declar'd him guilty of high treason;

treason; and seiz'd the duke of *Suffolk* and the lady *Jane*, who had been proclaim'd Queen some days before in *London*.

Q. Did *Dudley* make his escape?

A. No; and he was oblig'd to submit himself to Queen *Mary's* mercy.

Q. Did she spare him?

A. She sentenc'd him to lose his head, and afterwards gave orders for the beheading of near fourscore persons who had been accomplices with him in his guilt; of which number the lady *Jane* was one, tho' she had oppos'd all her father-in-law's proceedings: the lord *Guilford*, and the above mentioned *Dudley*, duke of *Northumberland*, lost their lives, pursuant to their sentence.

Q. In what manner did *Q. Mary* begin her reign?

A. She set the *Roman* catholicks at liberty; restor'd the popish prelates to their Sees, and allow'd a general liberty of conscience till the sitting of the parliament, by an act whereof, the exercise of any other religion, but the *Roman* catholick, was prohibited; she also repealed several acts which had been made in the preceeding reigns.

Q. Did she give no other testimonies of her zeal?

A. Having strengthned herself by the alliance of *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, whom she marry'd at *Winchester* the 27th of *July* 1554. she called a new parliament, in which King *Philip* and herself presided. Cardinal *Pool* made a very fine speech in it, after which both houses suppress'd the reformed religion, and restor'd matters to the same state, in which they had been before the divorce of *Henry VIII.* and the cardinal above-mention'd reconcil'd the nation to the church of *Rome*, after having absolved it from all ecclesiastical censures.

Q. Was a general obedience paid to these laws?

A. Great numbers adher'd strenuously to the profession of the true religion, whom Queen *Mary* punish'd with great severity: but the *Roman* catholicks paid dear for it under Queen *Elizabeth*.

Q. Was Queen *Mary* engaged in any wars?

A. Yes; for at the instigation of the King her husband, she came to a rupture with *France*; and contrary to the

promise she had made the parliament, she sent 8000 men into *Flanders*, which very much contributed to the victory of *St. Quintin*.

Q. Did she reap any advantage from this war?

A. No; and the duke of *Guise*, general of the *French* army, dispossessed the *English*, in *January* 1558, of *Calais*, *Guines*, and *Amiens*, and all they still possess'd in *France*.

Q. With what temper did the *English* receive this news?

A. With great disgust; and in the transports of their rage, they exclaim'd publicly against *Queen Mary's* administration; and 'tis said, that the grief she conceived on that account, and the aversion which *King Philip* had for her, contributed as much to her dissolution, as a drop of poison with which she was afflicted.

Q. When did she die?

A. On the 17th of *November* 1558, in the 43d year of her age, and the 6th of her reign.

Q. What were the qualities of this Queen?

A. She was a woman of great piety, was very zealous for religion; and of a strict and innocent life; however, as she resigned herself entirely to the humours and interest of the popish clergy, they gave her severe counsels, and the Queen follow'd them. Some say, that she was a lady of good nature, and of a merciful disposition in herself; what then can we expect from the reign of any popish prince, when the barbarous zeal and inhuman authority of that church, could gain so great an ascendant over the temper of a merciful prince, as to make her guilty of a great persecution? in which, besides unspeakable tortures, 270 of the Reformed Religion were burnt to death.

ELIZABETH XLIVth Monarch of England.

From 1558 to 1603.

Popes.

Emperors.

PAUL IV.	1555	FERDINAND I.	1558
PIUS IV.	1559	MAXIMILIAN II.	1564
PIUS V.	1565	RODULPHUS II.	1576
GREGORY XIII.	1572	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
SIXTUS V.	1585	HENRY II.	1547
URBAN VII.	1590	FRANCIS II.	1559
GREGORY XIV.	1590	CHARLES IX.	1560
INNOCENT IX.	1591	HENRY III.	1574
CLEMENT VIII.	1592	HENRY IV.	1589

Q DID Queen *Mary* leave any Issue behind her?
 A. No; Queen *Elizabeth* her sister, daughter of *Henry VIII.* and *Anne Boleyn*, succeeded to the crown.

Q. Describe the person of Queen *Elizabeth*?

A. She was well shap'd, and had a fine complexion; her features were pretty regular, so that she might have pass'd for a handsome woman, but for her *Roman* nose; she had an air of majesty and grandeur, that became her very well; her carriage was sweet and engaging; none of the ladies of her court exceeded her in the art of dress, or were more studious to heighten, with the pomp and beauty of ornaments, the charms which nature had bestow'd on her.

Q. What were the qualities of her mind?

A. She had an extensive and elevated genius, and her mind was fruitful of the greatest projects; her penetration was just, and she had so refin'd a turn for politics, as made her the wonder of all the sovereigns her contemporaries. She never reveal'd any of her secrets, but always conceal'd them from her favourites and chief ministers, who submitted to her with an implicit

obedience; and these she punish'd with great severity, whenever they discover'd any inclination to assume the least share of the sovereign authority to themselves.

Q. Was she learned?

A. *Cambden* assures us, that she could speak five or six languages; she is applauded for the unaffectedness of her carriage; her sincerity, affability, friendship; her zeal for justice, liberality, and magnificence; to which we must add, her bounty to all persons of distinguished merit; the protection she gave to the distressed, and the great generosity with which she assisted them in their wants.

Q. For what is she chiefly commended?

A. For having establish'd the protestant religion. She declar'd herself head of the church, and assumed the title of *Supream Governour thereof, within her kingdoms, both in spirituals and temporals*: but at the same time she suffer'd several things to remain upon their ancient foot, as judging them to be indifferent in their nature; such as the ornaments in churches; the titles of bishops, canons, and rectors; abstinence from flesh during *Lent*, and on all *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*. She put several jesuits to death, who were continually plotting to take away her life.

Q. For what other things is she applauded?

A. For having supported and assisted the protestants of *France*, *Scotland*, and the *Low Countries*; but she is accus'd by many, for dipping her hands in the blood of *Mary Queen of Scots*.

Q. Pray relate the particulars of this unfortunate Queen's story.

A. She was daughter to *James V.* King of *Scotland*, and of *Mary of Lorrain*, eldest daughter of *Claude* duke of *Guise*, and widow of *Lewis* duke of *Longueville*; she marry'd *Francis II.* King of *France*, when she assum'd the title of *Queen of England*, upon pretence that *Elizabeth* was illegitimate, and consequently unworthy to sit in the throne.

Q. Had *Queen Mary* any just pretensions to the crown of *England*?

A. She was grand-daughter of *James IV.* and of
Mar-

Margaret, eldest daughter of *Henry VII.* and it was by virtue of this right, that *James Stuart*, Queen *Mary's* son, was recognized King of *England* after the death of Queen *Elizabeth*.

Q. Pray relate some further particulars concerning this Queen.

A. Being now a widow, by the death of her husband *Francis II.* she returned into *Scotland*, whereof she was Queen; this kingdom was at that time divided into two factions, viz. the Roman-catholicks and Protestants, with the former of whom she join'd; but judging that she was too weak to support herself against the latter, who were headed by the earl of *Murray*, her bastard-brother, she marry'd *Henry Stuart*, lord *Darnley*, son to the earl of *Lenox*, the handsomest man in *Great-Britain*.

Q. Did not her marriage bring her into fresh troubles?

A. Her enemies, by their malicious insinuations, made *Henry*, her husband, jealous of one *David Rizzo* a musician, born in *Piedmont*, who was both ugly and ill-shaped; but then he had a profound judgment; was perfectly well vers'd in the *Scottish* affairs, and the only person in whom the Queen could confide at that time.

Q. What was the consequence of *Henry's* jealousy?

A. *Henry* laid *Rizzo* dead at the Queen's feet, which threw her into the deepest affliction; however she removed all the ill impressions that had been made in her husband's mind; and prov'd to him, that their enemies had no other view, in putting them at variance, than to ruin them both; but he was now very much sunk in her esteem: whereupon she recall'd the earl of *Murray*, whom she knew to be a very able statesman, and whom her husband had removed.

Q. Was the earl grateful for his favour?

A. No; for he instigated the earl of *Bothwell* to murder the King; promising at the same time, that he should obtain the Queen in marriage: whereupon *Bothwell* stabb'd his sovereign; carry'd off the Queen, whom he imprison'd in the castle of *Dunbar*, and terrify'd her so much, that he forc'd her to marry him.

Q. What follow'd after their marriage?

A. The earl of *Murray*, who only sought an opportunity to ruin the Queen, rais'd an army; besieg'd that unfortunate princess in the castle of *Dunbar*, and made himself master of it; but he suffer'd *Bothwell* to escape, and carry'd Queen *Mary* up and down through most of the cities of *Scotland*; whilst the people, who were wholly ignorant of the earl's guilt, look'd upon her as a wretch, who had convinc'd at her husband's murder, and the wife of the villain who had perpetrated it: so that they treated her with the utmost contempt.

Q. What became of her afterwards?

A. The earl got the sovereign authority into his own hands, in the name of young prince *James*, Queen *Mary's* son, by *Henry Stuart*; and imprison'd the Queen in the castle of *Lochlewen*, but some time after she made her escape out of it.

Q. Did no body take up arms in her defence?

A. *George Douglas* levied a body of 6000 men, in order to bring the earl of *Murray* to condign punishment, but he was defeated, and Queen *Mary* forc'd to fly into *England*.

Q. Did she meet with a sanctuary there?

A. Queen *Elizabeth* threw her into prison, where, for 18 years together, she labour'd under a variety of afflictions. The reason of Queen *Elizabeth's* acting in this manner, was either to revenge herself for the affront which Queen *Mary* had put upon her by a manifesto, in which she assum'd the title of Queen of *England*, and call'd Queen *Elizabeth* an usurper, and a bastard; or else, because Queen *Mary* secretly fomented the conspiracies that were carry'd on by the enemies of Queen *Elizabeth*; or lastly, in order to allow time sufficient for the protestant religion to strengthen itself in *Scotland*, during the imprisonment of Queen *Mary*, she being a zealous Roman-catholick.

Q. Had this afflicted princess no friend to take her part?

A. Most princes in *Europe* employ'd very earnest solicitations in order to procure her liberty; *Charles IX.* and *Henry III.* Kings of *France*, us'd entreaties as well

as threats ; but they were far from being formidable, by reason of the civil wars that rag'd in their dominions.

Q. What pretence did Queen *Elizabeth* make use of ?

A. She imputed to Queen *Mary* the horrid crime which *Bothwell* had perpetrated ; but after that this princess had plainly shew'd the unjust practices of her enemies, and her own innocence, Queen *Elizabeth* sought for fresh crimes to lay to her charge ; and accordingly she accus'd her of being an accomplice in certain conspiracies that had been form'd against her person, and made this the subject to her prosecution.

Q. What was the result of Queen *Mary's* trial ?

A. Queen *Elizabeth* caused her to be condemn'd to be beheaded, which accordingly was executed the 28th of February 1587, in *Fotheringay* castle, in spite of all the remonstrances of *Believre*, whom *Henry III.* had sent in order to get this sentence revok'd.

Q. What construction is generally put upon this action ?

A. It struck every one with the utmost horror ; however Q. *Elizabeth* made an apology for it, by saying, that she had granted her a pardon, which indeed was fact ; but then matters had been so contriv'd, that the messenger who carry'd it, was order'd not to arrive at his journey's end, till such time as the execution was over.

Q. Did not this action tarnish the lustre of Queen *Elizabeth's* reign ?

A. It, in some measure, threw a shade over the glory of it, which otherwise had been one continued series of immortal events.

Q. Did not Queen *Elizabeth* discover the utmost sorrow, when news was brought her that Queen *Mary* was executed ?

A. She burst into tears, and gave as strong testimonies of her affliction, as sighs and lamentations could give ; she also drove her privy-counsellors from her presence, and gave orders for their being prosecuted in the star-chamber.

Q. Had Queen *Elizabeth* no wars upon her hands ?

A. But few, and she maintain'd England in peace and

and tranquillity, and succour'd her allies with forces. The republick of *Holland* is infinitely indebted to, and in a great measure owes its establishment to her. She assisted the protestants of *France* with men and money; and *Henry the IV.* of *France* us'd frequently to say, that *he had received great services from her*. She also furnished *Don Antonio* of *Portugal*, King of the *Tercera* islands, with men and ships; but the expedition they went upon prov'd unsuccessful.

Q. Had she no other wars than those in which her allies engaged her?

A. She sent fleets on the coasts of *Spain*, who took and sack'd *Cadiz*, possessed themselves of *Pharo* in *Algars*, and made a dreadful havock all along the coast.

Q. What was the occasion of all these hostilities?

A. Queen *Elizabeth* did it in order to revenge herself upon *Philip II.* who in 1588 had invaded *England* with that prodigious fleet, to which he gave the name of the *Invincible Armada*. It consisted of one hundred and fifty men of war, having 19000 men on board, and 2630 pieces of cannon, and was furnished with ammunition and provisions for six months.

Q. Did this fleet perform any exploit equal to what the world expected from it?

A. No; part of it was lost by storms, and the lord *Howard* lord high-admiral of *England*, with *Drake*, *Hawkins*, and *Frobisher* vice-admirals, took, burnt, or dispersed the rest. The loss the *Spaniards* sustain'd in this engagement was so great, that they have never since been able to recover it; and Queen *Elizabeth* celebrated a triumph upon that occasion after the manner of the *Romans*; and caused a great number of medals, to be struck, that have eterniz'd the memory of this great event.

Q. Was she ever married?

A. No; her policy, and her love for liberty, was so great, that she always had an aversion to marriage.

Q. In what does her policy appear upon this occasion?

A. All the young princes of *Europe*, or such as had either sons or brothers to dispose of in marriage, paid her the utmost regard; for she always left them some

room to hope, and never gave them an absolute denial; and twas probably this very consideration that engag'd all the young *English* noblemen of high birth, to be continually about her person.

2. Which of the *English* lords had the greatest share in *Queen Elizabeth's* favour?

A. The earl of *Essex*, who was a very handsome man, and of a sweet and engaging carriage: he was brave, and of this he had given the most illustrious testimonies at the siege of *Roan*, under *Henry* the IV. of *France*, at the taking of *Cadiz*, where he himself commanded, and in the war with *Ireland*; but his jealousy and ambition proved his ruin.

2. In what manner?

A. 'Tis said, that he conspir'd against the *Queen*; but the plot being discovered, she caused him to be beheaded the 25th of *February*, 1601. It was afterwards given out, that she was sorry for it, and that the grief it brought upon her, shortned her days.

2. Of what disease did this *Queen* die?

A. Of a kind of palsy, the 24th of *March*, 1603, in the seventieth year of her age, and in the 44th year of her reign.

2. In what manner does *Mr. de Rapin Thoyras* conclude her character?

A. That she was a great and good *Queen*, in whom great virtue, and good qualities, and few faults, were conspicuous. But, continues the same writer, a circumstance which ought principally to raise our esteem of her, is, that she fixed the *English* in the enjoyment of a happiness, that was unknown to their ancestors, under most of her predecessors. This undoubtedly is the touch-stone, by which we are enabled to form a just judgment of those, whom God has appointed to preside over kingdoms.

JAMES I. XLVth King of England,

And the first of Great-Britain.

From 1603 to 1625.

Popes.			Emperors.		
CLEMENT	VIII.	1592	RODOLPHUS	II.	1576
LEO	IX.	1605	MATTHIAS	I.	1612
PAUL	III.	1605	FERDINAND	II.	1619
GREGORY	XV.	1621	Kings of France.		
URBAN	VIII.	1623	HENRY IV.		1519
			LEWIS XIII.		1610

Q. WHO succeeded Queen Elizabeth?
 A. James VI. King of Scotland, and I. of England, son of the unfortunate Mary Queen of Scots, and Henry Stuart lord Darnly, grandson to James V. and great grandson of James IV. and of Margaret eldest daughter of Henry VII. King of England.

Q. Where was this prince born?
 A. At Edinburgh, the 19th of June, 1566; and was baptized a Roman catholick in the month of December but was afterwards educated in the protestant religion and had the famous Buehanan for his tutor. As the earl of Murnay had seiz'd upon the Queen his mother, the crown was set on King James's head, and the above-mention'd earl govern'd under him, in quality of regent.

Q. How long time was the earl regent?
 A. Till 1582, when the King came to age: in 1603 Elizabeth Queen of England recogniz'd him for her lawful successor; and the same year he came to London and was there crown'd.

Q. Relate to me the qualities of this king.
 A. He was a learned and merciful prince; at one time he would express the greatest zeal for religion, and at others would be as lukewarm: he loved his subjects, and was naturally as pacific, as Queen Elizabeth

Elizabeth his predecessor had been haughty and intriguing. Hence some saucy wags took the liberty to fix a pasquinade upon the door of his cabinet; in which they gave him title of Queen, and that of King to * *Elizabeth*. He was reproach'd for not having exerted himself sufficiently during the imprisonment of the Queen his mother; but the earl of *Murray* had put it out of his power.

Q. Did he not endeavour to procure her liberty?

A. He sent several embassies to her, but did not dare to take any further steps, because Queen *Elizabeth* threatened to disinherit him, in case he attempted any thing against her interest.

Q. What memorable action did he perform after he was King of *England*?

A. Upon his coming to the crown, he promis'd to maintain, in their utmost force, the several laws which Queen *Elizabeth* had enacted against the *Roman* catholicks; and having discover'd a horrid conspiracy contriv'd against his person and the parliament, whereof the *Roman* catholicks were found guilty; he punish'd as many of the conspirators as fell into his hands, and commanded the priests and jesuits to depart out of his dominions.

Q. What title did he assume, in order to put an end to the disputes between the *English* and the *Scots*?

A. That of King of *Great Britain*, which gave universal dissatisfaction; for both *English* and *Scotch* were greatly displeas'd to have those names extinct, which they had made so famous in all parts of the world.

Q. Wherein did he shew a particular favour for *Scotland*?

A. He establish'd a royal council in that kingdom, or rather continu'd the old one, and these invest'd with a much larger authority than they had formerly enjoy'd when the kings resided in *Scotland*.

Q. Was not he engag'd in some wars?

A. No; he maintain'd his dominions in a profound peace, and employ'd himself in negotiations, whilst the

* *Rex fuit Elisabeth, nunc est Regina Jacobus.*
Emperor,

Emperor, and the King of *Spain* dispossest'd *Frederick* Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*, his son-in-law, of all his dominions.

Q. What was his most serious employment?

A. The study of divinity; and he wrote several pieces, in order to put an end to the disputes, that arose between those who were for episcopal government, and the dissenters in his kingdoms, and the *Arminians* and *Gomarists* in *Holland*; several of his works are still extant.

Q. Did he not once intend to turn *Roman catholic*?

A. 'Tis affirm'd that *William of Hugues*, archbishop of *Ambrun*, having brought him to doubt of the truth of the religion he profess'd, he had taken a resolution to restore the kingdoms of *England* and *Scotland* to the obedience of the See of *Rome*; that 'twas with this view he endeavour'd to marry his son to the Infanta of *Spain*; and afterwards concluded it with one of the sisters of *Lewis XIII.* but death prevented his putting so chimerical a project in execution.

Q. Where did King *James* die?

A. In his palace at *Theobalds* of a tertian ague after three weeks illness; he died on the 27th of *March* 1625. in the 59th year of his age.

Q. How many years had he reign'd?

A. Twenty two over *Great Britain*, and fifty eight over *Scotland*.

Q. Whom did he marry?

A. *Anne* daughter of *Frederick II.* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, and of *Sophia* of *Mekelburg*.

Q. What children had he by her?

A. Seven; namely, *Henry* prince of *Wales*, who died unmarried the 12th of *November* 1612; *Robert*, who died very young; *Charles I.* King of *England*, born in *Scotland* the 27th of *February* 1600; *Elizabeth*, married in *February* 1613, to *Frederick V.* Elector Palatine, and afterwards king of *Bohemia*; *Margaret*, born the 24th of *December* in *Scotland* 1598, and died young; *Mary*, born in *England*, died an infant; and lastly *Sophia*, born at *Greenwich*, and died the next day.

Q. In what manner does *Monfieur de Rapin* conclude his character?

A. What-

A. Whatsoever may be said to the prejudice, or in favour of the person of King *James*, it is certain that *England* was never in a less flourishing condition than under his reign; that his subjects were expos'd to the insults and raileries of other nations, the occasion of which was universally imputed to the King. The following Epigram was made in *France* in his time, which plainly shews the little esteem his neighbours had for him.

*Whilst king Eliza sat on England's throne,
Its arms, like thunder, aw'd the Spanish name;
But now divided, factious, prattling grown,
They're rul'd by James, that quaint pedantic dame.*

CHARLES I. XLVIth King of England,

And the second of Great-Britain.

From 1625 to 1649.

Popes.		FERDINAND III.		1637
URBAN VIII.	1623	Kings of France.		
INNOCENT X.	1644	LEWIS XIII.		1610
Emperors.		LEWIS XIV.		1643
FERDINAND II.	1619			

2. WHO succeeded King *James I*?

A. *Charles I.* his son, who in 1625 was proclaim'd King of *Great Britain*, and crown'd in 1626.

2. What were the qualities of this prince?

A. He was religious, gentle, polite, affable, just, and brave upon occasion; he had a great penetration, a solid judgment, and in a word was an excellent King; but at the same time he had the weakness to let himself be govern'd by his wife and his favourites; by their persuasions he executed several things, which first made his subjects murmur, and afterwards break out into open rebellion.

2. What actions did King *Charles I.* perform in the beginning of his reign?

O

A. At

A. At the urgent solicitations of the duke of *Buckingham* his favourite, he sent succours to the protestants of *Rochel* in 1627; but they did not meet with a wish'd for success; for the duke was defeated in the isle of *Rhe*, and force to raise the siege of fort *St. Martin*.

Q. Had he no wars within his kingdom?

A. Yes; and these proved so fatal, that they brought him to a most wretched and untimely end, as will be shewn in the sequel.

Q. What was it that occasion'd so sad a catastrophe?

A. The discontents of the *Scots*, who were the first that took up arms.

Q. What was the subject of their discontent?

A. During the imprisonment of *Mary Stuart*, and the minority of King *James*, the earl of *Murray*, regent of the kingdom, introduc'd the principles of *Calvin* into all parts of *Scotland*; and in order to engage all the great men of the kingdom in his interest, he either gave them, or conniv'd at their seizing upon, all the wealth that before had belong'd to the church. These petty sovereigns bore so heavy a hand over their vassals, that they complain'd thereof to the king, who upon that gave orders for the restitution of the tenths, and the right which belonged to the King, of filling up vacant benefices.

Q. Was this the only subject the *Scots* had for complaint?

A. King *James* would have established the church of *Scotland*, upon the same foundation with that of *England*, and accordingly had settled episcopal government therein: but as King *Charles* intended to go through with that design, he disgust'd all the presbyterians in that kingdom; the nobles secretly fomented their discontent; and no sooner was the king gone out of *Scotland* than it broke out openly.

Q. What was their first attempt?

A. They began by dispersing several seditious manifestos, and a little after refus'd to make use of that form of prayer which the King had sent them; and, at last, abusing of his majesty's goodness, they, in 1637, subscrib'd that famous league, to which they gave the name of the COVENANT.

Q. What

Q. What measures did the King take in order to put a stop to these disorders?

A. He annul'd the covenant; but the *Scots* finding he made no preparation to force them to a compliance; laugh'd at the order he had sent them, and thereupon they assembled a synod at *Glasgow*, where they abolished episcopacy, and repeal'd the several declarations which King *Charles* and the King his father had made upon that head.

Q. Did not the King punish their insolence?

A. He would have done it, and accordingly demanded a subsidy of the *English* parliament to enable him to levy a body of forces, but they refus'd to grant it, so that he was oblig'd to dissolve it. He afterwards summon'd all those who held any estates of the crown, by a *mesne tenure* or knights service, to appear in arms; and altho' very few of the nobility join'd him, he nevertheless march'd towards *Scotland* with great speed.

Q. What success did the King's troops meet with?

A. The rebels finding themselves unable to make a resistance, demanded a cessation of arms, which was granted them; after which a peace was concluded, the articles whereof were sign'd the 18th of *June* 1639; and notwithstanding that the King was the most powerful, and thereby enabled to chastise their insolence, he nevertheless consented to a treaty that was injurious to his honour, and advantageous to the rebels.

Q. Did this peace restore the kingdom to its former tranquillity?

A. The only use the rebels made of it, was to publish the King's weakness, and to excite the people not to lose the opportunity of defending their privileges under so mild and gentle a King.

Q. Were the *English* more submissive than the *Scots*?

A. They carried matters to the utmost excess, in the famous parliament which King *Charles* had conven'd in 1640, and declar'd themselves perpetual, in opposition to the antient rights of the Kings of *England*.

Q. What did this parliament do?

A. They oppos'd all the King's designs; attack'd such of his servants as were most zealously attach'd to him;

declar'd open war against both the King and monarchy; entred into a confederacy with the *Scotch* rebels, in order to overthrow the regal authority, and to set up a popular government.

Q. Did not the King dissolve them?

A. He would have done it, notwithstanding that he had sign'd an act by which he had declar'd them perpetual; but the parliament, far from complying with his commands to dissolve themselves, gave orders for the raising of an army, in order to maintain their rebellion.

Q. Did not the King oppose them?

A. He levied an army, and headed it himself, and in the beginning of 1642 advanc'd to fight the rebels; in the beginning he gain'd several advantages, and his adherents defeated the parliament forces in several engagements, and took several cities; but fortune afterwards changing her countenance, the parliamentarians struck so much terror in the King's forces, that they defeated them wherever they came; whereupon the insurrection became general.

Q. What measures did the King take?

A. After the surrender of *Oxford*, out of which he was oblig'd to fly, to prevent his being taken prisoner, not knowing where to fly for safety, he went over to the *Scotch* army, imagining that they were less exasperated against him than the *English*.

Q. What reception did he meet with from them?

A. They at first paid him the honours due to a crown'd head, but at the same time they watch'd him so narrowly, that he was in reality their prisoner.

Q. Did he continue long among them?

A. No; for the *Scots* deliver'd him into the hands of the *English*, who imprison'd him for a considerable time in different places.

Q. Did not the King attempt to recover his liberty?

A. He found an opportunity to escape from his confinement at *Hampton Court*, and afterwards fled to the *isle of Wight*.

Q. Did he continue there for any time unmolested?

A. No; he was seiz'd by a party of soldiers sent by *Cromwell* for that purpose, who carried him prisoner to

Hurst.

Harst-Castle, afterwards to *Windsor*, and at last to *St. James's House*.

Q. How did they dispose of him after his arrival?

A. *Cromwell*, the army, and the independents, resolv'd to put him to death; and accordingly commissioners were appointed to bring him to a tryal, and *Bradshaw* was appointed president of the court.

Q. What was the substance of the charge?

A. 1. He was accus'd of having depriv'd the two houses of their privileges.

2. For having resolv'd to set up a tyrannical power in the kingdom, and to oppress the two houses.

3. For having sent for forces from beyond sea, in order to carry on his designs.

4. For having been the cause of all the blood that had been shed for those five years, during which the civil wars had continu'd. And, finally, for having fomented the rebellion of the *Irish*.

Q. In what manner did they carry on this tryal?

A. They oblig'd the King to appear three times successively before this infamous court of justice, the president requiring him every time to answer to the above-mention'd articles.

Q. Did he do so?

A. He twice refus'd to make any; but finding that his silence would be to no purpose, and that his enemies intended to make it a handle, in order to persuade the people that he had nothing to alledge in his defence, he thought proper to answer the third time he appear'd before his pretended court.

Q. Was his speech of any service to him?

A. Altho' he plainly prov'd that they had not the least right to judge him, and that there was no jurisdiction upon earth could call him to account; he was nevertheless oblig'd to answer to the articles exhibited against him: but all he alledg'd in proof of his innocence, was not able to stop the fury of his enemies, who were bent upon his death.

Q. What sentence did this pretended court pass upon the King?

A. He was condemn'd to lose his head, and the sen-

tence was read in his presence the 27th of *January* 1648.

Q. Was it executed.?

A. Yes; on *Tuesday* the 30th of the same month. He behav'd upon the scaffold with a surprising constancy and resolution; made a speech to the people, who flock'd in prodigious numbers in the Banqueting-house and about *Whitehall*, which was the place of execution: After having made the utmost protestations of his innocence, and declar'd that he forgave all his enemies, he laid his head on the block, when the executioner, who was mask'd, sever'd it from his body. This was in the 24th year of his reign. He was interr'd without the least pomp or ceremony.

Q. Pray relate to me the particulars of his family.

A. In 1625 he marry'd *Henrietta Maria*, daughter to *Henry IV.* of *France*, and of *Mary of Medicis*, by whom he had three sons, namely, *Charles II.* and *James II.* Kings of *Great Britain*, and *Henry* duke of *Gloucester*, born the 8th of *July* 1634, and died in *Flanders* a little after the restoration.

Q. Had he any daughters?

A. He had had four, three of whom were then living, viz. *Mary*, born the 4th of *November* 1631, married the 2d of *May* 1642 to *William Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, father of King *William III.*

Elizabeth, born the 28th of *January* 1635, died unmarried in 1650.

Anne, born the 17th of *May* 1637, died in her infancy.

Henrietta, born at *Exeter* the 16th of *June* 1644, married in 1661 to *Philip* duke of *Orleans* sole brother to *Lewis XIV.* King of *France*; she died in 1672.

Q. In what manner does *Monfieur de Rapin* sum up the character of this monarch?

A. He was endu'd with a great number of virtues and fine qualities. There is even room to believe that his errors flow'd entirely, and were naturally connected with, the design which he had form'd to enslave *England*; and that if on certain occasions he swerv'd a little from the laws which sincerity prescribes, this he

only did in order to execute his enterprizes with greater facility. Had it not been for this unhappy project, he might have been consider'd as one of the most accomplish'd princes that ever sat on the *English* Throne; this unhappy monarch ow'd all his misfortunes to the duke of *Buckingham*, the earl of *Strafford*, archbishop *Laud*, and the *Queen*.

INTER-REGNUM,

The Commonwealth of *England*: And,
OLIVER CROMWELL Lord Protector.

From 1649 to 1660.

Pöpes.

INNOCENT X. 1644.
ALEXANDER VII. 1655

Emperors.

FERDINAND III. 1637
LEOPOLD 1658

King of France.

LEWIS XIV. 1643

2. DID the tragical death of *Charles I.* put an end to the hatred of the parliamentarians?

A. The house of commons would not allow him to be buried with the least pomp; caus'd several inscriptions in his honour to be eraz'd, and set up others in the same places, in which the odious Epithet of tyrant was given him.

2. Did they go any farther?

A. They declar'd the princes his sons incapable of filling the throne; forbid the prince of *Wales* to be proclaim'd King of *England*; and some time after put a price upon his head; and the duke of *Gloucester* and princess *Elizabeth*, who were in their hands, were sent to the countess of *Leicester*, who was entrusted with the care of their education.

2. What form of government now prevail'd in *England*?

A.

A. That of a free state, when they abolish'd the very title of king; the house of commons annulled that of the lords, after which they set upon a common-wealth, and obliged all those who possess'd any publick post to take out new grants and fresh oaths to qualify themselves for the holding the same.

Q. Did the other kingdoms join with them in their proceedings?

A. In *Scotland* and *Ireland*, *Charles* the II^d, was acknowledged king, the inhabitants whereof sent deputies to him, who brought him into *Scotland*, where he was crown'd in the abbey of *Stoon* with the usual ceremonies, the 1st of *Jan.* 1650.

Q. What measures did the common-wealth of *England* take upon the news thereof?

A. *Oliver Cromwell*, who had now gotten the supreme authority into his own hands, though without any title, remov'd the fears of the house of commons; sent small bodies of forces to keep the *Scotch* in subjection; cross'd into *Ireland* at the head of 12000 men; beat the royalists in several rencounters, and after having taken *Drogheda*, made himself master of the strongest holds in that island?

Q. Was he long in obtaining these several conquests?

A. He went into *Ireland* in *August* 1646, and was obliged to return to *England* in *June* 1650, upon advice sent him by the parliament, that the *Scots* had taken up arms in favour of *Charles* II. whom they had recalled, in order to set him upon the Throne.

Q. Was *Oliver* as successful in *Scotland* as he had been in *Ireland*?

A. *Fairfax* having resigned to him the chief command of the forces, he marched against the royalists, and having fought them in two engagements, in which fortune seemed to declare for neither; he defeated them in 1651, and possess'd himself of the chief cities of that kingdom.

Q. Was the king's party able to make opposition after this?

A. The coronation of this prince, which was solemnized some days after, and *Oliver*'s sickness, inspir'd

the

the royalists with new vigour; a great number of the *English* nobility joined them, whereupon his majesty enter'd *England*, and beat *Lambert*, vanquish'd all the forces of the common-wealth that oppos'd him; after which taking some strong holds, he was received in *Worcester*.

Q. Did the king always meet with the same success?

A. *Oliver* follow'd him with hasty marches, and came up with him under the walls of the city of *Worcester*, when both Armies came to an engagement; the battle was long and bloody, and King *Charles* did all that could be expected from a brave prince, who was for recovering the crown he was deprived of; his troops fought with equal bravery, but the king retiring in order to put himself at the head of the *Scots* that refused to fight; the soldiers, who were ignorant of the reasons for his so doing, began to give way, whereupon *Cromwell* gain'd a compleat victory, which happened on the 3d of *Sept.* 1651.

Q. What became afterwards of King *Charles*?

A. He withdrew to a place near *Bescobol*, where the faithful *Penderels* conceal'd him; he afterwards mov'd up and down in different places, where he met with various adventures, which made him take a resolution of leaving *England*.

Q. Did he find an opportunity of doing it?

A. After having often shifted from place to place, and disguised himself, sometimes in the habit of a peasant, and at other times in woman's apparel, he arriv'd at *Bright-Hempsted* in *Suffex*, where going on board a ship he arriv'd safe at *Fescamp* in *Normandy* the 30th of *October* 1651, when he went to *Paris*, and afterwards to the *Low-Countries*.

Q. Did *Cromwell* make an advantage of the ruin of King *Charles's* party?

A. Having quell'd the tumults that broke out in *England* and *Scotland*, which he did in a very short time, he usurp'd the sovereign authority; when keeping the army on foot, though the parliament was against it, he caus'd himself to be proclaimed protector of the kingdoms of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, in *Dec.* 1653.

Q.

Q. Was this a new title ?

A. No; it had been always given to those who governed the kingdom during the minority of the kings, or when they were thought incapable of presiding in the government.

Q. How did *Oliver* conduct himself during his administration ?

A. He assumed a greater authority than ever any *English* monarch had done, and as he had a strong army, which he kept still on foot, and a considerable naval force, both which were at his disposal; he govern'd the parliament with a despotick sway, and kept the most rebellious spirits in subjection. A conspiracy was form'd against his person, but this, instead of succeeding, only gave him an opportunity of governing in the most arbitrary manner.

Q. How did he agree with the neighbouring states ?

A. He behav'd with inexpressible haughtiness, and declared war with the *Dutch* in 1652, which was carried on with great vigour on both sides; the *Hollanders* were victorious in the first engagement, but afterwards being always vanquished, they concluded a peace the 3th of *April* 1654, to the great advantage of *Oliver*.

Q. Did he give the *French* the same treatment ?

A. No; and in order to engage them in his interest, he sought every opportunity of obliging them; he gave the precedence to the *French* ambassador in prejudice to that of *Spain*; he afterwards took an advantage of the troubles that reigned in the court, and the taking of *Dunkirk* by the *Spaniards*, and made a treaty by which he oblig'd himself to furnish the *French* with 6000 land forces, and 50 ships.

Q. Did *France* agree to this treaty ?

A. The queen regent was oblig'd to accept *Oliver's* offers, after having rejected the solicitations which had been made to her for eight years together; however she had this to alledge in her favour, that she was the last who recogniz'd the usurper, and that the unhappy state of the affairs of the *French* nation had forced her to it.

Q. How did he agree with *Spain*?

A. The King of *Spain* was the first crown'd head that recogniz'd *Oliver*, which he did as early as the year 1650; however, the protector made war against him without proclaiming it, for he attack'd his fleets and vanquish'd them; after which he ruin'd his colonies in *Jamaica*, and made himself master of that island; he next sent admiral *Blake* to cruize on the coast of *Spain* and *Italy*, who forc'd all to submit to the *English* flag.

Q. Did he give any other marks of his authority?

A. *Don Pantaleon Sa*, the ambassador of *Portugal's* brother, having committed a murther, he caused him to be beheaded. *Oliver* had order'd him to be arrested in the abovemention'd minister's house, the door whereof he had commanded to be broke open. This action made a great noise in the world, and heavy complaints were made upon that account at *Lisbon*; but as the *Portuguese* were not at that time in a condition to revenge themselves, they made such satisfaction to the protector, as he had the haughtiness to demand.

Q. Had he any difference with other potentates?

A. He concluded a secret alliance with *Sweden* against *Denmark*, and had made a treaty with *France* against *Spain*; he sent ships and soldiers who assisted in the taking of *Dunkirk*, which was given up into his hands for a time; but the king of *France* purchas'd it afterwards of king *Charles*.

Q. What have you to say farther of the usurper?

A. After having establish'd his authority upon the ruins of the parliament, the members of which were only so many slaves to his passions, and made the protectorate hereditary in his family; after having several times refus'd the crown and scepter the same parliament offer'd him, he died of a fever the 3d of *September*, 1658.

Q. Describe the qualities of *Oliver*.

A. It is evident from what we have already related of him, that he was an illustrious warrior, a great politician, a man of the most consummate prudence, and that he had the art of making himself both fear'd and

and

and respected; his ambition was insatiable, his cruelty terrible, and his hypocrisy inexpressibly great. To have seen him, a man would have taken him for a saint.

Q. How did he treat the *Roman-Catholicks*?

A. As he knew that the royal family had not any more zealous adherents, he us'd them very ill; forbid them the exercise of their religion in *England*, and at the same time granted liberty of conscience to all other sects; however he intended to have extirpated them all, the *Presbyterians* excepted, when death took him out of the world.

Q. How many sons did he leave behind him?

A. Two; the eldest whereof, named *Richard*, was soft, voluptuous, and too easy, and in a word incapable of supporting the exalted state, to which his father had raised him.

Q. What is the name of the younger?

A. *Henry*, a man fitted both for the cabinet and the field; the darling of the soldiery and the people. *Oliver* had designed him for his successor in the protectorate, and there is no doubt but that as he was young, he would have carried it to a greater height than his father; but as he was in *Ireland* at the head of the army, and *Oliver* being very sick, he caused *Richard* to be acknowledged protector.

Q. How many daughters had he?

A. Four viz. *Elizabeth* his best beloved, married to Mr. *Claypole*; the second to the lord *Falconbridge*; the third to Mr. *Rich*, grandson to the earl of *Warwick*; and the fourth, who lived till the reign of King *William*, died a maid.

Q. Of what family was *Oliver* descended?

A. From the *Williams's*, a *Welsh* family, one of whom married a daughter of the lord *Cromwell*, King *Henry 8th's* vicar-general in spirituals, who taking the name of *Cromwell*, transmitted it to his posterity. *Oliver* was born at *Huntington* in 1600. His mother was the daughter of Sir *Richard Stuart*, of the isle of *Ely*, and his wife *Elizabeth* was the daughter of Sir *James Bouchier*. He studied at *Sidney college* in *Cambridge*,
but

but was nothing of a scholar; his first employment in the army was a captain of horse, whence he rose to be general of all the forces of the parliament, either rais'd or to be rais'd.

RICHARD CROMWELL, Second Protector.

2. **W**Hat were the most remarkable transactions under the administration of *Richard*?

A. Lambert, and the chief officers of the army, resolv'd to get the sovereign authority into their own hands; and being very well belov'd by the rest of the officers, they desir'd the new protector to appoint a general over them, who after several put-offs was oblig'd to grant them their demands; whereupon they ask'd him for the sums that were due to them for arrears; but he not having money for that purpose, nor authority sufficient to levy taxes, he summon'd a parliament to meet the 28th of *February*, 1659.

2. What was done in it?

A. Nothing at all; and *Richard* having therein discover'd some marks of his weakness, dissolv'd it by order of the army, who absolutely requir'd him to do so, they being highly incens'd at the prohibition which the parliament had made, in prejudice to the officers of the late protector's faction; whereupon they filled their posts with others, who oppos'd his interests; and uniting with the army which general *Monk* commanded in *Scotland*, they summon'd the parliament which had beheaded the late King, to meet in *May* following.

2. Did this parliament enjoy more authority than the former?

A. They resolv'd to abolish the protectorate, and to depose Richard, who did not offer to make the least resistance, but resign'd his power upon their first demanding it, upon condition that they should pay his debts, and assign him an income sufficient to live in an

honourable manner ; but *Henry* was not so easily prevail'd with to quit the command of the army in *Ireland*.

Q. In what state was *England* at that time ?

A. It was divided into three parties ; that of the parliament or common-wealth, that of *Lambert* or of the army, and that of the royalists, who forbore to unite till such time as general *Monk* had put himself at the head of those, who only waited for an opportunity of declaring for their sovereign.

Q. Did the parliament preserve their authority ?

A. They maintain'd themselves for some time, till *Fleetwood* and *Lambert* oblig'd them to quit their seats, when a senate, or rather committee, was constituted to carry on a kind of Government.

Q. What was the success of it ?

A. This committee, which consisted of 28 persons, was very much oppos'd ; the former parliament which had been dissolved in a forcible manner, and the city of *London* fearing that the officers of the army would assume all the sovereign authority, occasioned great disturbances in *London* : they indeed were suppress'd at last, but it was with very great difficulty.

Q. What was the result of all these cabals ?

A. *Monk*, whose design was to restore the king, took advantage of this opportunity, by making the royalists declare themselves ; accordingly he seiz'd upon several of the strongest places on the frontiers of both kingdoms ; corrupted part of the *English* army ; whilst the apprentices in *London* fell upon the army who were going to make themselves masters of the Tower, and the lord-mayor of *London* summoned a new parliament, which heighten'd the commotions.

Q. Did *Monk* make his advantage of them ?

A. This general, after having got such Members of parliament to be restor'd to their seats, as had been dispossest'd of them in 1648, for adhering to the king ; was declar'd general of the forces of the three estates ; by which means he soon got all the authority into his own hands.

Q. What use did he make of it?

A. He won over all those officers who opposed his proceedings; dissolv'd the former parliament, and caused a new one to meet, and manag'd matters so well with the members thereof, as to incline them to restore the king.

Q. Was he not travers'd in his designs?

A. *Lambert*, who had escap'd out of the tower, where he was prisoner, put himself at the head of a few troops; but he was taken prisoner in the first engagement, so that *Monk* was not disappointed in his aim.

Q. In what manner did he execute it?

A. When all things were ready, he sent the King word, and besought him to send some person to the parliament, in order to determine their resolutions.

Q. What measures did the king take?

A. He sent Sir *John Granville* to *London*, with a letter directed to the parliament, which was receiv'd with joy; and accordingly it was resolved that they should send some of their members to invite him to return, when he was proclaim'd King of *Great Britain* the 18th of *May*, 1660.

Q. Where was he at that time?

A. At *Breda* in *Holland*, where the members went to wait upon him, when embarking on *Wednesday* the 23d of *May*, they landed at the beach near *Dover Pier* on *Friday*, with the duke of *York*, the duke of *Glocester*, and a great number of noblemen and gentlemen. *Dover* being incapable of entertaining the great numbers that came to attend on his Majesty, he took coach immediately; but about two miles from this place the King took horse, his brothers riding on his right hand, and general *Monk* on the left, when they came to *Canterbury*. On *Monday* following his Majesty came to *Rocheſter*, from thence to *Black-beath*, where the army was drawn up. In *St. George's-Fields* the Lord-Mayor deliver'd the sword to his Majesty, from whence he was conducted through *London* to his royal palace at *Whitehall*, with the utmost joy and magnificence; when immediately he paid his devotions and thanks to *Almighty God*.

CHARLES II. XLVIIth *King of England; And III^d of Great-Britain.*

From 1660 to 1685.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperor.</i>
ALEXANDER VII.	1655	LEOPOLD 1658
CLEMENT IX.	1667	
CLEMENT X.	1670	<i>King of France.</i>
INNOCENT XI.	1676	LEWIS XIV. 1643

Q. **P**Ray relate to me in few words the remarkable particulars in *King Charles's* Life, from his birth to his coronation?

A. He was born in the palace of *St. James's* the 29th of *May*, 1630; crown'd king of *Scotland* in the abbey of *Scoon* in 1650; lost the battle of *Worcester* the 3^d of *September* the year following, and was oblig'd to quit his kingdom; was restor'd in 1660; came over into *England* the beginning of *May* of the same year; made his publick entry into *London* the 29th, and was crown'd at *Westminster* the 23^d of *April* of the year following, viz. 1661.

Q. Describe this monarch?

A. He was handsome, and of a little stature; he was naturally good and just, and had a great deal of wit and penetration; he had given a thousand shining marks of his bravery, in the wars which the parliament had carried on against the king his father, and in that in which he himself was engaged with them after his coronation in *Scotland*; he was master of vast resolution, and very munificent; but he is censur'd for an over-great complacency for the ladies, for whom he had a very great passion.

Q. What did he do upon his first ascending the throne?

A. He set up the statues of the late king which had been thrown down, and in the inscription on some of them,

them, he bestow'd on him the title of martyr; he punish'd with great severity ten of the regicides who had sat upon him as judges, and were excepted out of the act of indemnity; and repeal'd the several acts which had been made in prejudice of the memory of that unfortunate King, against himself, and all the royal family.

Q. What did he do farther?

A. He repeal'd all the laws which had been enacted in favour of a popular government; rewarded those who had done him any considerable service, restor'd the episcopal clergy to their benefices, of which *Oliver* had depriv'd them, for the sake of the *Presbyterians*, on whom that usurper bestow'd them; and in a word, settled things upon the same foot on which they had stood before the year 1640.

Q. Had he any wars during his reign?

A. The *Dutch* presuming to dispute with him the sovereignty of the ocean, and refusing to strike to the *English* flag, he declar'd war with them the 12th of *January*, 1664.

Q. Did any thing memorable happen during this war?

A. Several battles were fought, the first of which was a very bloody one; the duke of *York*, who commanded the *English* fleet, gave the most signal tokens of an intrepid courage, and an undaunted resolution upon this occasion, and triumph'd over the *Dutch*; this happen'd the 13th of *January*, 1665.

Q. Did the *Dutch* sustain great loss in this engagement?

A. *Opdam* their Admiral lost his life in it, and his ship; 22 were either taken, burnt or sunk, and some affirm that the whole fleet would have been destroy'd, had not *Bromker* prevented their crowding all the sail they could in order to pursue the enemy, while the duke was asleep, notwithstanding he had given orders for that purpose a little before he lay down?

Q. Had the *English* as good success in the other engagements?

A. Both nations had fought several battles, but none of them were decisive till that which was fought off of *Chatham*, wherein *Ruyter* behav'd with the utmost

bravery; however, the *Dutch* finding that their trade was half ruin'd, sued for peace, and King *Charles* agreed to it.

Q. Did not a dreadful plague happen in *London* in 1665?

A. Yes; and in one year it swept away 97306 persons; and the year following a raging fire broke out, which consumed 13200 houses, besides 89 churches, &c.

Q. Where was this peace concluded?

A. At *Breda*, the 24th of *August*, 1667; after which the famous treaty, call'd the *Triple Alliance*, was stipulated between the *English*, the *Swedes*, and the *Dutch*.

Q. What was the occasion of this alliance?

A. The *Dutch* being jealous of the grandeur of *Lewis XIV.* and taking umbrage at the flourishing state of the affairs of their benefactor, they were resolv'd, if possible, to set bounds to it; and for that purpose made an alliance with the Kings of *England* and *Sweden*, in order, as they pretended, to force him to observe the treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*.

Q. Did King *Charles* reap any benefit by this peace?

A. It gave him an opportunity of quieting the minds of the people, and to make them acquiesce with the declaration he published for liberty of conscience in 1672, design'd principally in favour of the *Roman-Catholicks*, whom he consider'd as his most faithful subjects; but he was oblig'd to annul it about the end of the year 1674.

Q. Was the alliance with *Holland* lasting?

A. Till 1672, when his *Britannick* majesty, (to whom the duke of *York's* faction, and the *Roman-Catholicks*, had insinuated that the *Dutch* favour'd the *English* malecontents,) enter'd into a league with *Lewis XIV.* in order to punish them for their clandestine practices.

Q. What was the success of this war?

A. The *English* fleet, commanded by the duke of *York*, having joined that of *France*, whereof the marshal d'*Etrée* was admiral, engag'd *Ruyter* for two days successively; the success was doubtful the first day, but the next the duke of *York* had the better of *Ruyter*, and would have defeated him entirely, had not a fog arose, which

which gave him an opportunity of standing off with his ships.

Q. Was the war carried on with the same success on land?

A. The King of *France* marched at the head of his troops, and in less than two months took fourteen of the principal cities in *Holland*; triumph'd over *Spain* and the empire, who were confederates with the *Dutch*; and became so formidable by his victories, that the *English* took umbrage at it, and oblig'd King *Charles* to make a peace with *Holland*, which was concluded in *London* the 19th of *February*, 1674.

Q. Were the *English* satisfy'd with this peace?

A. Notwithstanding that *Lewis XIV.* had accepted of King *Charles* as mediator of a general peace, the *English* did all that lay in their power to oblige King *Charles* to declare war with *France*; and carried matters to that length, as to prescribe laws to him upon that head, in the parliament held in 1677.

Q. With what temper did King *Charles* receive these laws?

A. With indignation, and accordingly he immediately dissolv'd that parliament; nevertheless the prince of *Orange* arriving at *London* about the end of the campaign of the same year, and having espous'd the eldest daughter of the duke of *York*; he manag'd matters so well with the King, that he prevail'd with him to consent to join in a confederacy against *France*, which was sign'd at the *Hague* the 10th of *Jan.* 1678.

Q. What was the result of this confederacy?

A. It came to nothing; the fleet which King *Charles* fitted out did no manner of execution; for notwithstanding that Sir *William Temple*, ambassador from King *Charles*, did all that lay in his power to prevent the conclusion of the treaty of *Nimeguen*, a peace was nevertheless agreed with the *Dutch* on the 10th of *August*, and with the *Spaniards* on the 17th of *Sept.* King *Lewis* making his own conditions.

Q. In what did King *Charles* employ himself during the peace?

A.

A. In suppressing the factions, which the earl of *Shaftsbury* had fomented in the kingdom, in order to ruin the *Roman-Catholicks*, and to exclude the duke of *York* from the succession.

Q. In favour of whom were all these commotions made?

A. Of the duke of *Monmouth*, who gave out that he was King *Charles's* legitimate son.

Q. Who were those that presum'd to make so bold a motion?

A. The house of commons; and in a debate about regulating the succession, 207 votes were given to exclude the duke of *York*; but the bill being sent up to the lords for their concurrence, it was thrown out, there being 39 *Yea's* for the duke, against 27 *No's*.

Q. What did king *Charles* do upon this occasion?

A. He declar'd the duke of *Monmouth* his natural son, and banish'd him the kingdom; after which he either prorogu'd or dissolv'd several parliaments, that had presum'd to present several addresses to him, in order to exclude the duke of *York*.

Q. What was the reason of their hating the duke in this manner?

A. The opinion they had of his being a *Roman-Catholick*, which indeed was justly grounded; and their aversion to that religion, being heighten'd by the manifest discovery of a plot, carried on by the *Roman-Catholicks*, in which the duke was concern'd, they endeavour'd to exclude him the succession; but finding it impossible for them to bring it about in a parliamentary way, certain seditious spirits form'd a conspiracy to assassinate him, and to murder the king at the same time.

Q. What were the effects of this conspiracy?

A. On the day appointed for the execution of their design, the conspirators hid themselves upon the road to *Newmarket*, in a solitary place through which the king was to pass; and it would have been impossible for him to have escaped their wicked hands, had not an unforeseen accident obliged him to return sooner to *London* than was expected; by which means the conspirators were disappointed.

Q. Was not this plot discover'd?

A. Yes; and the King upon his being acquainted with it, punish'd some of the conspirators; and the earl of *Shaftsbury*, who was at their head, fled into *Holland*, where he ended his days.

Q. What plot was that which was carried on by the *Papists*?

A. *Titus Oates*, who had been educated among them, accus'd them of having conspir'd against the King's life, the *Protestant* religion, and the government of the kingdom; he further affirm'd that the *Pope*, the Kings of *France* and *Spain*, the duke of *York*, and several of the nobility were accomplices in it; and that *Thomas White*, or *White-bread*, provincial of the *Jesuits* in *England*, was at the head of it.

Q. What follow'd these impeachments?

A. They were heard before the parliament, who imprison'd several *Roman-Catholicks*, many of whom were convicted according to law, and condemn'd to die; and among the rest the duke of *York's* secretary.

Q. Were these all the commotions that happen'd in King *Charles's* reign?

A. Most of his parliaments were tumultuous; the *Cameronians*, or *Scotch* fanaticks took up arms, and great disturbances happen'd in *London* about the election of sheriffs; but King *Charles* reign'd during the rest of his life without a parliament; kept the *Scots* in their duty; and oblig'd the citizens of *London* to submit to his will, and depriv'd it of its privileges.

Q. When did King *Charles* die?

A. The 6th of *Feb.* 1684-5; and notwithstanding that he openly profess'd the *Protestant* religion, he nevertheless died a *Roman-Catholick*.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Yes; to *Catherine*, daughter of *Don Juan IV.* King of *Portugal*; and of *Louisa de Guzman*, daughter of the duke of *Medina Sidonia*, who had for her portion two millions of *crusades*, or about 300,000 *l.* sterling, and the city of *Tangier*; she was born at *Villa Viciosa* the 25th of *December* 1638.

Q.

Q. Did he leave any children behind him?

A. Yes, he left several of both sexes, but they were all illegitimate.

Q. Who were they?

A. By Mrs. *Lucy Walters* alias *Barlow*, he had *James Scot*, afterwards created duke of *Monmouth*; by the lady *Boyle*, the viscountess *Shannon Charlotte*; by Mrs. *Catherine Pegge*, *Charles Fitz-Charles*, commonly called *Don Carlos*, created earl of *Plymouth*; by *Barbara*, dutchess of *Cleaveland*, *Charles Fitz-Roy*, created duke of *Southampton*, *Henry Fitz-Roy*, created duke of *Grafton*, and *Charlotte*, married to the earl of *Litchfield*; by Mrs. *Hellen Gwynne*, *Charles Beauclerk*, duke of *St. Albans*, and another son named *James*, who died young; by *Louisa de Quérouaille*, a French lady, created dutchess of *Portsmouth*, *Charles Lenox*, created duke of *Richmond*; by Mrs. *Mary Davis*, *Mary Tudor*, married to *Edward*, eldest son of the earl of *Derwentwater*.

Q. Was not there some suspicion that the king had been poison'd?

A. Yes; for when his body was open'd, there was not sufficient time allow'd for taking an exact observation of his stomach and bowels; and when a certain physician seem'd to be more inquisitive than ordinary about the condition of those parts, he was reprov'd for his curiosity. In the next place, his body stunk so extremely within a few hours after his death, notwithstanding the coldness of the season, that the people about him were extremely offended with the smell; a circumstance very extraordinary in one of his strong and healthy constitution. However, few princes die suddenly, but immediately the World is apt to ascribe it to foul play, especially if the time and manner of it are attended with unusual circumstances.

JAMES

JAMES II. XLVIIIth *King of ENGLAND,*
And Fourth of *Great Britain.*

From 1685 to 1688.

Pope.

INNOCENT XI. 1676.

Emperor.

LEOPOLD 1658.

King of France.

LEWIS XIV. 1643.

Q. WHO succeeded King *Charles II*?

A. The duke of *York* his brother, called King *James*, the II^d of *England*, and VIIth of *Scotland*; he was born at *St. James's*, *October* the 13th, 1633, proclaimed the 6th of *February*, 1685. Few princes have ascended the throne with greater acclamations of the people, or more to their satisfaction than he did; he was crown'd on *St. George's* day, the 23^d of *April*.

Q. Did not he enjoy some considerable post under the King his brother?

A. Yes; that of lord high admiral of *England*, in which quality he had commanded the *English* fleet in the *Dutch* war, when he gave the most signal testimonies of his valour, as has been already observed.

Q. What did he in the beginning of his reign?

A. He summoned two parliaments, the one to meet in *England*, the other in *Scotland*, who granted him all his demands; that of *Scotland* annex'd the duty of the excise to the crown, and gave a subsidy of two hundred and sixteen thousand pounds sterling. The *English* parliament went farther, and mov'd to have those impeach'd who in former parliaments had voted to exclude him the crown; however, the King was very far from entertaining any thoughts of revenge, and accordingly pardon'd them all.

Q.

Q. Was this all the King did ?

A. He had, for the better bringing in of *Popery*, always entertain'd a resolution of granting liberty of conscience, and publish'd a declaration for that purpose in 1687, which he first sent into *Scotland*, where it was unanimously received by the council there; and accordingly it was published in all parts of that kingdom.

Q. What reception did it meet with in *England* ?

A. The privy-council approv'd of this declaration, but with this difference, that the sacramental test was not annulled here, as it had been in *Scotland*, but was only suspended; exempting those from being subject to the penal Laws, who then enjoy'd, or were to enjoy for the future, any place of trust, without having taken it.

Q. In what manner was this declaration received by the people ?

A. As it seem'd to be made in favour of *Dissenters* of all denominations, the several sectaries in *England* receiv'd it with the highest testimonies of joy, and thanked his Majesty by their addresses; in a word, all were highly satisfy'd with it, except the members of the church of *England*.

Q. Could the King prevail with the parliament to consent to it ?

A. Altho' he employ'd all his endeavours to bring them over, he nevertheless found it impossible for him to effect it, which made him dissolve it; notwithstanding he had the greatest reason to be satisfy'd with it upon all other accounts.

Q. Were the *Protestant* bishops idle all this time ?

A. Some of these refus'd to publish the declaration for liberty of conscience, and a great number of the nobility spoke openly against it; whereupon the King turn'd several of them out of their employments, and remov'd them from court.

Q. Did not they revenge themselves upon this account ?

A.

A. The male-contents combin'd together, in order to hinder the King from infringing the laws of the realm; and several lords engag'd in this confederacy.

Q. By whom was this confederacy headed?

A. By the prince of *Orange*, who took advantage of the opportunity, which the discontent of the nobility; the complaints they made; and the petitions he receiv'd from them gave him: and together form'd that famous revolution, to which the birth of the prince of *Wales*, which was look'd upon as spurious, gave the finishing stroke.

Q. In what manner?

A. As the birth of this prince, depriv'd the King's daughters of all hopes of succeeding to the crown, those persons whose interests were united with theirs, join'd the male-contents, and declar'd against the court; all imaginable methods were employ'd to persuade the *English*, that this prince would compleat the ruin of the *Protestant* religion, which the King his father had not dar'd to extirpate entirely.

Q. Was this reason only made use of?

A. To this it was added, that King *James's* design was to deprive the *English* of their laws, which indeed was justly founded; and that he expected a body of men from *France* for his better support; and design'd afterwards to crush the authority of the parliament, in order to set up a despotic and arbitrary power.

Q. Did the *English* submit to these impositions?

A. They are of too restless a temper, and too jealous of their privileges, to sit long easy under any encroachments; upon which several lords and gentlemen of distinction, went over into *Holland* to invite the prince of *Orange* to come and deliver them, while he in the mean time was carrying on the confederacy at *Augsburg*, in order to prevent King *James* from being succour'd by the *Roman-Catholic* princes.

Q. What was it that fully determin'd the prince of *Orange* to accept of the invitation?

A. The Tryal of the bishops, who after having escap'd the unjust punishment that was preparing for them,

Q

wrote

wrote to this prince, and assur'd him that the whole nation was absolutely resolv'd to rescue themselves from arbitrary government.

Q. What was the tryal of the bishops?

A. There were seven of them, of which number the archbishop of *Canterbury* was one; the other six being the bishops of *St. Asaph*, *Bath and Wells*, *Ely*, *Exichester*, *Peterborough*, and *Bristol*; these had refused to publish the declaration by the King's order for liberty of conscience; when being very much discontented, they met, and went boldly to present a petition, upon which the King order'd them to appear before the council.

Q. Did they appear?

A. They were forc'd to obey, whereupon they were accus'd of having publish'd a libel that struck at the royal authority; upon which they were sent to the tower; and being afterwards try'd at the *King's-Bench-Bar*, were acquitted.

Q. Was it possible for the prince of *Orange* to conceal his design?

A. Mr. *Skelton* being inform'd by *Verace* of *Geneva*, of the preparations that were making, sent notice thereof to his sovereign. The count d'*Avaux*, ambassador of *France* to the *States-General*, gave also such certain advice of it, that the King of *France* thought himself oblig'd to offer the King of *England* a powerful succour.

Q. Did King *James* accept of it?

A. It is said he was betray'd by the earl of *Sunderland*, his prime minister; however, he returned the King of *France* thanks for his offer, and contented himself with taking all proper measures for his security within his own dominions.

Q. What measures did he take?

A. In order that the *Protestants* might have no further subject for discontent, he repeal'd, or rather suspended till the sitting of the parliament, most of those acts which had been made in favour of the *Roman-Catholicks*, abolish'd the ecclesiastical commission, and took off the suspension from the bishop of *London*.

Q. What steps did King *James* take, in order to set up the *Roman-Catholick* religion?

A. He was afraid of attempting any thing in opposition to the laws, lest he should exasperate the *Protestants*; but to the end that he might not deprive himself of the assistance of those he falsely thought his most faithful subjects, he resolved to fill up several of the chief posts in the government with them; and in order to qualify them for holding places of trust, he gave orders to several persons of great experience, but entirely devoted to his interest, to enquire whether he might not justly dispense with the penal laws.

Q. What judgment did they give?

A. The cause of Sir *Edward Hales*, a *Roman-Catholic*, whom the King had dispens'd from taking the Test, was pleaded with great warmth; and the lord chief-justice *Herbert* gave it as his opinion, that as Sir *Edward Hales* had been dispens'd from the law by the lawful authority of the king, he ought to continue in the enjoyment of his post.

Q. Was this attended with no other consequences?

A. The *Protestants* were greatly troubled to find the King's favour extend so manifestly to the *Roman-Catholicks*. Dr. *Sharp*, rector of *St. Giles's*, and afterwards archbishop of *York*, deliver'd his thoughts upon these proceedings with great boldness and resolution, in a sermon preached by him; an account whereof being brought to the King, he was very urgent with the bishop of *London* to censure the doctor for it.

Q. Did the bishop obey him?

A. He contented himself with giving the doctor a slight admonition; but the King not thinking this sufficient, set up an *Ecclesiastical Court*, and constituted some of the prelates, as well as of the laity, commissioners of the same; who summoned the bishop of *London* and the doctor to appear before them.

Q. What was the sentence of this court?

A. The Bishop and Dr. *Sharp*, were both suspended from the execution of the ministerial office, during his majesty's pleasure; which sentence silenc'd all the clergy.

Q. Did not a faction endeavour to ruffle these happy beginnings?

A. The duke of *Monmouth*, natural son of the late King, returning from the *Low Countries*, where he had been banish'd for some former attempts, landed at *Lyme* in *Dorsetshire* the 11th of *June*, 1685, at the head of 2000 men.

Q. What declaration did he publish in justification of his conduct?

A. That the sole motive of his taking up arms, was to maintain the protestant religion, which King *James* intended to extirpate.

Q. Did he succeed in his rash enterprize?

A. He took and plunder'd *Wells*; but the 16th of *July*, the King's forces commanded by the earl of *Faversham* coming up with him, he was defeated, taken prisoner, and carried to the tower.

Q. What befel him afterwards?

A. As the King was of opinion, that it would be necessary for him to sacrifice the duke to his security, he himself gave orders for his being beheaded; for I don't find that the King had him judg'd according to the common forms of law: accordingly he was executed the 15th of *July*, 1685.

Q. What is the character of the duke of *Monmouth*?

A. He was brave, generous, and extremely handsome, constant in his friendship, just to his word, and an utter enemy to all sorts of cruelty.

Q. Was he the only person who had taken up arms against the King?

A. The earl of *Argyle* went from *Holland*, and landed in *Scotland*, which he flatter'd himself would rise in his favour; but on a sudden he was universally abandoned, and was afterwards taken and condemned to lose his head, which was executed in *Edinburgh* the 17th of *June* of the same year.

Q. Did the executions end with the duke?

A. No; those which follow'd were as cruel and barbarous as had ever happen'd in any age, considering the
in-

inabilities of the poor wretches to do mischief. The first that fell under the bloody lord chief justice *Jefferies*, was Mrs. *Alicia Lisle*, a very ancient gentlewoman, who being try'd for concealing Mr. *Hicks* a non-conformist minister, and *Richard Nelthrop*, the latter being a stranger, and the former in no proclamation, the jury brought her in three times *not guilty*; but at last *Jefferies's* threats so far prevail'd, that she was found guilty of high treason, and beheaded for it. But not to enter into particulars, *Jefferies* caused 29 to be executed at *Dorchester*, near as many at *Exeter*; and at *Taunton* and *Wells*, where he finish'd his bloody assize, he condemned upwards of 500 persons, whereof 239 were executed, and their quarters set up in the principal places and roads of the country, to the great annoyance of passengers. In *London* one *Elizabeth Gaunt* was publickly burnt for having assisted one of *Monmouth's* adherents to make his escape; and for fear lest we should tire the reader, we omit a great number of barbarous actions which he committed.

Q. Was he the only bloody instrument in these barbarities?

A. Colonel *Kirk* likewise play'd the butcher among these miserable Creatures; for when after the defeat he came to *Taunton*, he caused 19 men to be hang'd there, with pipes playing, drums beating, and trumpets sounding, making sport at their executions, and afterwards boil'd their quarters in pitch, and set them up in several parts of the town, when he had burnt their bowels.

Q. But what execution made the most noise?

A. That of alderman *Cornish*, sheriff of *London*, a gentleman very well belov'd, who in *October* was committed to *Newgate*, and a week after was try'd upon an indictment of high treason, for that in 1682, he had promis'd to assist in a rebellion against *Charles II*; and notwithstanding that there appear'd manifest contradictions, in what the evidences depos'd against him, he was nevertheless condemned and executed as a traytor the 21st of *October* 1685. Mr. *Bateman*, a very eminent surgeon, was also executed for the same treason.

Q. Did this prevail with the prince of *Orange* to lay aside his enterprize?

A. No; he set out from *Holland* the 19th of *October*, 1688, with the fleet, which consisted of 50 men of war, 20 frigates, as many fireships, and about 400 transports, and was now ready to set sail, having about 12 or 13 thousand forces on board; they carry'd a white flag, with the prince's arms, and these words round them, *The Protestant Religion and Liberties of England*; and at the bottom the motto of the house of *Nassau*; *I will maintain*.

Q. Was their voyage successful?

A. The whole fleet was sail'd out of the port, and had begun to steer their course, when a storm arose, which oblig'd them to return back into the harbour; however, they put to sea again the first of *November*.

Q. Had not the king of *England* a fleet to oppose that of the prince of *Orange*?

A. Yes; the lord *Dartmouth*, the *English* admiral, had promis'd the King to intercept the enemy, but he did not show himself; and the prince, after having cast anchor at the *Isle of Wight*, landed his forces at *Torbay*, without meeting with the least opposition, and immediately publish'd a great number of manifestos.

Q. What was the substance of these manifestos?

A. The prince of *Orange* therein declar'd, that he had been invited into *England* by a great number of the nobility of that kingdom; and that the sole motive thereof was in order to prevent the setting up of a tyrannical power, and the ruin of the church of *England*, which would soon be follow'd by the abolition of the fundamental laws of the kingdom.

Q. Did not the *English* oppose the prince of *Orange's* enterprize?

A. No; for the greatest part of them justly consider'd him as their deliverer. The lord *Cornbury*, afterwards earl of *Clarendon*, was the first officer in the army who declar'd against the King, and brib'd part of his forces, at whose head he march'd to *Exeter*, which the prince had taken possession of a little after his landing.

Q. Did the rest continue faithful to him ?

A. Very far from it ; the revolt was almost general ; and 'tis even said, that certain lords had resolv'd to seize upon the King's person.

Q. Did they succeed in it ?

A. They had, as some say, engag'd the King to visit the van-guard of his army, which lay nearest to the enemy ; but as he was just going to step into his coach, his nose fell a bleeding, which disappointed them in the design they had to carry him to *Exeter* : but this whole relation has no manner of foundation.

Q. What did these lords do when they found themselves disappointed ?

A. *Churchill* and the rest went over to the prince of *Orange*, (but the former before his departure wrote a very respectful letter to the King,) with several other persons whom they had brought over.

Q. What measures did the King take ?

A. Finding there was no trusting his own army, he marched back with it to *London*, to secure that city ; but in his march he found he was abandon'd by those in whom he had repos'd the greatest confidence ; and he was afterwards abandon'd by the prince of *Denmark* his son-in-law, the duke of *Ormond*, and several others.

Q. What course did he take, in order to check the progress of the enemy ?

A. He got together, in *London*, as many of the most considerable of the nobility as were then in that city ; sent commissioners to the prince of *Orange* to stop his march, declaring at the same time that he would call a free parliament, which was appointed to meet the 15th of *January*.

Q. Did this stop the prince ?

A. No ; and the commissioners met with an unfavourable reception from him, and one of them told King *James* that there was no farther security for his person.

Q. Did the king continue any time in *London* ?

A. He left it the night of the 10th of *December*, 1688, accompany'd only with Sir *Edward Hales*, Mr. *Sheldon*, and Mr. *Abbadie*, a *Frenchman*, his valet de chambre, in order

order to cross over into *France*, when they went on board; but having put in to ballast the ship that was to carry them, he was seiz'd by some rude fishermen, who plunder'd him, and oblig'd him to stay at *Feverham*, and sent notice thereof to *London*.

Q. What did the nobility do at this juncture?

A. They gave orders to the earl of *Feverham* to go with the King at the head of a brigade of his guards, as also the principal officers of his household, to wait his commands.

Q. Did they obey these orders punctually?

A. Yes; and brought back the King to *London*, who made his entrance into that city on the 16th of *December* with the utmost acclamations, bonfires being made, and the people giving the highest testimonies of their affection.

Q. What was the prince of *Orange* doing all this time?

A. He sent some forces to *London*, who secur'd *Whitehall* and *St. James's*, to the former of which places the King had invited him; and then sent word to his majesty, that it would be proper for him to leave *London*, and retire to *Ham*, a house belonging to the dutchess of *Lauderdale*.

Q. Whither did he go?

A. As he designed to cross over to *France*, he desir'd to withdraw to *Rochester*, which was granted him; and the same day, being the 18th, the prince of *Orange* came to *London*, when the people made bonfires for joy of his arrival, tho' they had done the same but two days before upon the King's coming into it.

Q. Where was the queen and the prince of *Wales* at this time?

A. The count of *Lauxun*, afterwards duke of that name, who happen'd to be in *England* at that time, having concerted with the King about sending away the Queen and the prince; had the good fortune to carry them out of *London* in the night of the 9th or 10th of *December*, and having conducted them to *Gravesend*, he, with great wisdom and good luck, put them on board a small vessel, when they met with a good voyage, and landed safe

at

at *Calais* on the 10th of *December* about 4 in the Evening.

Q. What reception did she meet with there?

A. With all the honours that were due to her quality; and as soon as the King of *France* received advice of her arrival, he sent his coaches to fetch her; and the count of *Armagnac* complimented her in his name; he went as far as *Chatou* to receive her, and waited upon her to *St. Germain's*, which he had order'd to be got ready for the reception of their *Britannick* majesties.

Q. Did the King stay any time at *Rocheſter*?

A. No; for this prince taking advantage of the negligence of those who guarded him, but who were thought to have received orders to wink at his going off, left the castle in company with the duke of *Berwick* and his first valet de chambre; went on board a ship which was prepar'd for him, and after having met with a good voyage, arrived at *Ambleteuse* about 3 in the morning, from whence he went to *St. Germain's*. The King of *France* received him with the highest testimonies of friendship.

Q. What measures did the *English* take after the King was thus withdrawn?

A. They intreated the prince of *Orange* to take the administration upon himself, till such time as they had assembled the estates of the kingdom, under the name and title of the *Convention*, which was order'd to be held the 22d of *January*.

Q. What was the result of this convention?

A. The house of commons, whose members were very much in the interest of the prince of *Orange*, declar'd the throne vacant by the King's abdication; but the house of lords were some time before they would agree to it; but at last those who had the real interest of their country at heart prevail'd, and the throne was accordingly declar'd vacant.

Q. Were these all the steps they took?

A. Several forms of government were propos'd, but the prince of *Orange* giving them to understand that he would return back into *Holland*, and abandon the kingdom to King *James's* resentment; they resolved to offer him the crown, which was done without specifying under

under what title, since he could not obtain it either by election, by conquest, or succession.

Q. Was the prince of *Orange* declar'd King?

A. Without once mentioning the prince of *Wales*, of whom they did not think proper to take the least notice; they suppos'd the princess of *Orange* to be heir to the crown. Accordingly the prince and princess of *Orange* were declar'd King and Queen, without making any distinction; and it was enacted, that in case the prince of *Orange* surviv'd his consort, he should continue to reign; and that the princess of *Denmark* should not succeed till after his death, and in default of his issue.

Q. Was all this put in execution?

A. They only waited for the arrival of the princess of *Orange*, who was coming from *Holland*, and being arriv'd, they were both crown'd on the 21st of *April* by the bishop of *London*; the archbishop of *Canterbury* absolutely refusing to perform that ceremony.

Q. Were the *Scots* more faithful?

A. The principal lords of that kingdom at first oppos'd King *William's* interest; however, his party prevail'd, and they sent their crown to him?

Q. Did *Ireland* submit?

A. The earl of *Tyrconnel* maintain'd it for King *James*; King *William's* party prevail'd only in the *North*; upon which they fled to *Londonderry*. King *James* arriving at *Dublin* about *Easter*, he laid siege to it; but the inhabitants thereof stood it out till succours came to them from *England*, which made them lose all hopes of taking it, tho' they had reduc'd it to great extremities.

Q. Did King *James's* arms make no farther progress?

A. The duke of *Schomberg* was come over at the head of a body of *English* forces, when King *James* advanced in order to fight him; but not having been able to bring him to an engagement during the whole summer season, he marched to *Dublin* in order to winter there.

Q. Had King *James* better success the following year?

A. No; King *William* went over into *Ireland*, and arrived there the 14th of *July*, 1690; and joining with the duke of *Schomberg*, he marched towards *Dublin* with 36000 men and 60 pieces of cannon.

Q. Did King *James* suffer him to get the start of him?

A. He had but 25000 men, and 12 pieces of cannon, notwithstanding which he advanc'd forwards to meet King *William*, and resolv'd to fight him at the pass of the *Boyne*; when both armies engag'd the 18th of *July*, 1690.

Q. What was the success of it?

A. King *James* had given orders to fall upon the troops which had pass'd a ford, during which his guards disputed another pass at a ford with the brave duke of *Schomberg*, who there lost his life, after having acquir'd immortal glory; but the order not having been observ'd soon enough, the right wing was broke in spight of the great bravery of the duke of *Berwick*; of the chevalier *de Hoquincourt*, who lost his life in the engagement; and of *Hamilton* who was taken prisoner. King *James* retir'd to *Dublin*, and from thence into *France*; after which King *William* laid siege to *Limerick*, but was oblig'd to raise it.

Q. Did nothing happen after this?

A. The year following the king of *France* sent a fresh body of forces into *Ireland*, which joining with those of the late king, form'd one body; several battles were fought, but with ill success on King *James's* side, and in that which was fought at *Agbrim*, *St. Ruth*, the French general, who commanded the army, was kill'd; after which the *English* generals possess'd themselves of all the strong holds, and even of *Limerick*, which was surrender'd upon very honourable terms the 3d of *October*, 1691, which was the last effort King *James* was able to make.

Q. Was King *James* ever married?

A. He was twice marry'd; first to the lady *Anne Hyde*, daughter to *Edward Hyde*, earl of *Clarendon*, lord high chancellor of *England*, which marriage was not made publick till 1661.

Q. Who was his second wife?

A. *Maria Josepha* of *Este*, daughter of *Alphonso* of *Este*, duke of *Modena*, and of *Laurenza Martinuzzi*.

Q. Had he any children by them?

A. By his first wife he had two sons, who both died in their infancy; and two daughters, viz. *Mary*, born in 1662,

1662, and married in 1678 to *William Nassau*, prince of *Orange*; this princess was very much belov'd by the *English*, and govern'd the *British* dominions alone, during the absence of King *William* in various campaigns.

Q. Who was his second daughter?

A. *Anne*, born in *February*, 1663, married the 7th of *August*, 1683, to prince *George* of *Denmark*, son to *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark*, and *Sophia Amelia* of *Lunenburg*.

Q. How many children had he by his last wife?

A. He had one son, or at least a suppos'd son, call'd the prince of *Wales*, born the 10th of *June*, 1688, at 10 in the morning; he was baptized the 25th of *October* of the same year; *Dada*, archbishop of *Amasia*, the *Pope's* nuncio, representing the *Pope* as his godfather, and *Queen Dowager* his godmother, who nam'd him *James-Francis-Edward*.

Q. Had he no daughters?

A. After his exile in *France*, he had also a daughter born at *St. Germain's* the 28th of *June*, 1692; but she did not long survive her father.

Q. When and in what place did King *James* die?

A. At *St. Germain's* the 7th of *September*, 1701, in the 69th year of his age.

Q. What were the qualities of this prince?

A. *Historians** who have wrote with impartiality give the following character of him; That he was a good father, a good husband, a good master, and would have been a good King, had it not been for the wicked ministers about him; that as his greatest enemies cannot deny, but that he show'd a great deal of bravery on several occasions, when he was duke of *York*; so his best friends are oblig'd to confess, that he had more piety than resolution, when he was King of *England*; in a word, that the religion he profess'd was the source of all his misfortunes; for 'tis highly probable, that his reign would have been happy, had he himself been a *Protestant*, or his subjects *Roman-Catholics*. He might have been as happy as his

* *Boyer's history of King William*, vol. i. p. 598. of the second edition in *English*.

his heart could have wish'd, had he but made the laws the measure of his government, and not have hearken'd too much to a sort of men, who never did any thing but mischief in the world. He had met with but too many occasions, to understand the genius and temper of the people he was to govern; and to know that it was utterly impracticable to overthrow the establish'd religion, or to introduce a new one.

WILLIAM III. and MARY II. XLIX.

King and Queen of England, and

V. of Great-Britain.

Popes.

Emperor.

INNOCENT XI. 1676

LEOPOLD 1659

ALEXAND. VIII. 1689

King of France.

INNOCENT XII. 1691

LEWIS XIV. 1643

2. **H**OW did the rest of the monarchs of Europe receive the news of the coronation of King William, and the abdication of King James?

A. With the same eye that policy views all other human affairs; the greatest part of them immediately recognized King William; the rest were more reserv'd, and forbore to declare themselves till they saw how things would go; but the King of France openly refus'd to acknowledge him.

2. To what is this disparity of conduct owing?

A. To a difference of interests, which for the most part are the motives on which princes act.

2. But if it be unlawful to depose sovereign princes, did not those monarchs who abandon'd King James, prejudice themselves by so doing; and have they not betray'd their own rights?

A. This is supposing the very business in question.

2. Is not this the opinion of the whole French nation?

R

A.

A. Yes; but they have not always entertain'd it: and if they change their opinions with the times, we are not to wonder to find so great a contrariety in the conduct of princes, whose interests are frequently so opposite to one another.

Q. In what does this contradictory conduct of the *French* consist?

A. When they pretend that the general estates of a kingdom, are never empower'd to dispose of the crown; since if this maxim be true, the kings of the third race had no manner of right to it.

Q. What examples have you to prove it?

A. They were the estates that after the death of *Lewis V.* firnam'd the *Indolent*, elected *Hugh Capet*, in prejudice of *Charles I.* duke of *Lorraine*, son of *Lewis* firnam'd the *Transmarine*; and this was owing to nothing but a grudge they bore him, for having shewn a particular affection for the *German* nation.

Q. But have the *English* the same right, and do we meet with examples to this purpose?

A. With more than in any other *Christian* nation, for a proof of which, we need go no farther than this history.

Q. What instances have you met with to this purpose?

A. Notwithstanding that *Edward* the elder had left two sons behind him, the *English* nevertheless set the crown upon the head of *Athelstan* his natural son, without being forc'd to it from any necessity, but only because his sublime virtues compensated for the defects of his birth.

Q. What farther instances have we?

A. *Edwin* and *Edgar* being but children, and the state of affairs requiring a man of experience, *Edred* their uncle was chosen King by the unanimous consent of the whole nation. The inhabitants of the kingdoms of *Mercia* and *Northumberland* finding that *Edwyn* oppress'd his subjects, elected his brother *Edgar* in his room. As the children of *Edmund Ironside* were very young, and that *Canute* a *Danish* prince was worthy of the crown, the *English* elected him for their King. The ill qualities of *Harold* had made him so odious, that he was going to be depos'd, when death rid the kingdom of him. The *English* chose *Harold II.* for their King, notwithstanding that

that *Edward* the confessor had, by his last will and testament, left the crown to *William* the bastard duke of *Normandy*. King *Stephen* of *Blais* was prefer'd in prejudice of the Empress *Matilda*, daughter of *Henry I.* King *John* usurp'd the crown, which in right belong'd to *Arthur*, son of *Geofrey* his elder brother. *Edward II.* continued 19 years in prison, and notwithstanding that the queen and prince *Edward* his son were very urgent for his liberty; nevertheless the *English* order'd the crown to be set on the prince's head, and likewise that the King should abdicate the kingdom with his own consent, or that otherwise he should be forc'd to it. *Richard II.* was seiz'd, and his cause try'd before the parliament, who oblig'd him to resign his crown, which they gave to *Henry* earl of *Derby*. *Edward IV.* was crown'd King, who forc'd *Henry VI.* with his queen, and the prince of *Wales*, to fly for sanctuary into *Scotland*. The crown of *England* was offer'd to *Richard III.* uncle to *Edward V.* To conclude, the misfortunes and unhappy end of *Charles I.* are too well known to be mentioned in this place.

Q. What inferences would you draw from these several examples?

A. That the *English* nation have at all times asserted their rights, as well as the original contract which was made between them and their Kings, when they set the crown upon their heads; and that these rights are not subject to prescription.

Q. When were King *William* and Queen *Mary* crown'd?

A. Four months after King *James* had voluntarily withdrawn himself a second time, which was on the 23d of *December*, 1688. when he went to *Rochester*, where he published a manifesto, which is a plain proof that he was then at full liberty to act; and that he had made use of it when he left *Rochester* the 23d of *December*, in order to go over into *France*. The assembly of the estates, which was then call'd the *Convention*, they not having the authority to call themselves a parliament, desir'd the prince of *Orange* upon his first coming, to take the administration into his own hands. The 13th of *February*, 1688-9. they tender'd the crown to the prince and princess of *Orange*, who were accordingly crown'd in *Westminster-Abbey* the 21st of *April* following.

Q. Did the *Scots* also acknowledge them for their sovereigns?

A. They were proclaim'd King and Queen in that kingdom the 21st of *April*, when three noblemen were sent to *London* to present them with the crown, and to administer the coronation-oath; which was accordingly perform'd at *Whitehall* the 22d of *May*.

Q. Were they not afterwards disturb'd in the peaceable enjoyment of their kingdoms?

A. We before observ'd, that King *James* went over from *France* into *Ireland*, where the lord *Tyrconnel* headed his party, and getting together a considerable army; possess'd himself of the greatest part of that kingdom, and besieged *Londonderry*, but without success; which was chiefly owing to the uncommon bravery of Mr. *Walker*, a clergyman. Some *Scotch Highlanders* also took up arms in his favour, but they were at last defeated by general *Mackay*.

Q. Were King *William* and Queen *Mary* engag'd in no other wars?

A. As the King of *France* exercis'd all manner of hostilities upon the *English*, upon pretence of assisting King *James*; not to mention that *England*, by the treaty of *Nimeguen*, was obliged to take up arms against all those who should infringe it; King *William*, by a manifesto published the 21st of *May*, 1689, proclaim'd war against the *Fremb*, who had before declar'd it with the *Emperor* and the *Dutch*.

Q. Did *England* continue undisturb'd during the King's absence in *Ireland*?

A. No; a horrid conspiracy was carried on in the former, but was discover'd by the prudence and vigilance of the Queen; the *French* fleet appear'd upon the coast in order to assist the conspirators, but notwithstanding that they had a strong faction, the Queen took such prudent measures that the enemies were repuls'd.

Q. Did not the news of this considerable incident hasten the King's return into *England*?

A. As he knew himself secure in the Queen's conduct and vigilance, he made an end of the campaign, and did not return to *London* till the 22d of *September*.

Q. When was *Ireland* entirely reduc'd?

A. In 1691, the *English* generals having defeated the new succours which the *French* King had sent thither; possess'd themselves of all those strong holds that still remain'd in the enemy's hands; and these having been oblig'd to surrender *Limerick*, the war was at last happily ended in that kingdom.

Q. What happen'd in *Holland*?

A. The King went thither the latter end of *January*, 1691. and it being at that time very difficult to land, he went on board a Sloop, where he continued the whole night, expos'd to the severity of the season; and the ice was so prodigiously hard, that it was not without great hazard of his person he got to *Goree*, from whence he set out immediately for the *Hague*.

Q. How was he received there?

A. Notwithstanding that the *Dutch* were very much surpriz'd at his arrival, they not having receiv'd the least notice of it, and were therefore not ready to receive him with the magnificence they had prepar'd; they nevertheless gave the highest testimonies of their joy, and some days after he made his publick entry: the triumphal arches, and the rest of the pomp with which it was grac'd, being the least part of the solemnity, he being receiv'd with the acclamations of the people, who gave the utmost demonstrations of their zeal and affection for this great Prince.

Q. What actions did he perform in *Flanders*?

A. Upon the opening of the campaign, he put himself at the head of his forces, and those of the allies; but not having been able to bring the enemy to a battle, he return'd at the end of the campaign into *England*, which the Queen had govern'd during his absence, with her usual prudence and conduct.

Q. What happen'd in 1692?

A. The King gain'd a famous naval victory over the *French*, who by their own confession lost seventeen of their best ships, among which was the admiral; however it is certain they sustain'd a greater loss, not to mention that a great number of transports were burnt in the harbours

Q. What made the King of *France* hazard a battle, when he knew the consequences of it would be so very fatal to his kingdom, in case he lost it?

A. He depended upon the success of a new conspiracy in *England*, which he flatter'd himself would have even extended itself to the *English* fleet.

Q. Did not the King of *England* sustain some loss in the abovemention'd campaigns?

A. He had the mortification to see himself dispossest'd of *Mons* and *Namur*, of which his allies were the occasion, by not furnishing him with forces sufficient to ward off a blow which he saw impending; however he found this advantage by it, that his presence prevented the *French* from pushing their conquests: but he had the misfortune to leave the *French* masters of the field, in the battle of *Steenkirk*, and yet came off with great honour; for he disputed the victory with so much bravery, that he left them no possibility of reaping any benefit by it; so that the only advantage they gain'd, was barely that of having fought.

Q. Was not another conspiracy carried on against him in 1692?

A. A *Frenchman*, whose name was *Grandval*, undertook to assassinate King *William* in *Flanders*; but the horrid plot being happily discover'd, and the infamous wretch having been fully convicted of the same, he was condemn'd to the punishment due to traitors.

Q. What exploits were perform'd in 1693?

A. About the end of *July* the battle of *Landen* or *Neerwinden* was fought, with almost the same success, as that of *Steenkirk*; the number of the enemy's forces was superior to those of the King of *England*; however, this great monarch signaliz'd himself in so valiant a manner, and so far animated his soldiers by his example; that tho' the *French* fought as bravely as men could do, the only advantage they gain'd, was that of remaining masters of the field, and of having obtain'd the victory: they indeed, about the end of *September* following, laid siege to *Charleroy*, which was oblig'd to capitulate; for as the bad season made the roads impracticable, it was impossible for the army to advance to succour it.

Q. Relate the most considerable events of the following year?

A. The most remarkable was that of the death of the illustrious queen *Mary*, which was as much regretted in the *United Provinces*, as in her own kingdom.

Q. Pray give the character of that princess?

A. She was inform'd with a solid piety, and an uncommon goodness; had a great sweetness accompany'd with majesty; an air of grandeur, without the least tincture of pride; her conduct was wonderful, and she had the sincerest affection for the King her husband, which he as kindly returned; a virtue so much the more worthy of the highest applause, as it is so rarely met with among the great: finally, she paid an entire submission to the will of her creator, of which she gave convincing proofs in her expiring moments, as she had before done in the whole tenor of her life.

Q. Did not her death give a new turn to affairs?

A. No; for altho' the King discover'd a sorrow equal to the great loss he had sustain'd, it was not possible for it to abate his courage; for in 1695, he cross'd over into *Holland*, and put himself at the head of the army, as he had done in the preceding campaigns.

Q. What was the success of this campaign?

A. The *French* considering how much blood it had cost them to take *Namur*, and the stratagems they had been forc'd to employ, thought that after having strengthened the fortifications so much as they had done, it would be impregnable; however, King *William* laid siege to it: but as the confederate army could not hinder marshal *Boufflers* from throwing himself into it with a powerful succour, and that the garrison consisted of upwards of 15000 men; this circumstance, join'd to the good condition of the place, made the *French* laugh publickly at this attempt.

Q. Had not the *French* forces sufficient to raise the siege?

A. They had a stronger army than the besiegers; whereupon they began their march, and advanc'd towards *Namur*, but without daring to make the least attack, altho the season was not unfavourable, nor the
rivers

rivers swell'd with floods so as to hinder their crossing over; as had happen'd two years before, when King *William* march'd to succour it.

Q. How long did this siege continue?

A. The trenches were opened the 12th of *July*; the city capitulated the 4th of *August*, and the castle surrender'd the 1st of *September*. Thus the King of *Great-Britain* subdued, in less than seven weeks, by the single force of his arms, one of the strongest places in the world; defended by a strong garrison, and in sight of an hundred thousand brave soldiers, who were inur'd to the fatigues of war.

Q. By whom was the kingdom govern'd during the King's absence?

A. By a regency compos'd of several of the nobility, whom the King had made choice of before his setting out.

Q. Was the government quiet and undisturb'd at his return?

A. Yes, in outward appearance; but within it was shook with dreadful convulsions, which being fomented by a great number of factious persons, had like to have stopt the progress of the most glorious reign that ever *England* saw.

Q. After what manner?

A. A fresh conspiracy was carry'd on, of a more horrid nature, and more dangerous in its consequences, than all those which had hitherto been set on foot.

Q. Who was at the head of it?

A. We may boldly affirm, in one sense, that it was King *James* himself, since it was concerted in his favour; and that he had given out several commissions for the taking up of arms.

Q. But was he concern'd in that part of it which affected King *William's* life?

A. We are very much in the dark as to that matter; but those who are for diving into this mystery, must examine the several facts and circumstances therein, and from thence form a judgment.

Q. Relate some of those circumstances?

A.

A. Great preparations were carried on in *France* both by sea and land, but upon what design, no one could tell; however, when the time for putting them in execution was come, that mystery was clear'd up. The King of *France*, who never reveal'd his projects, but when he fancied himself sure of success, spoke publickly of restoring King *James*, as a thing that must inevitably happen; in consequence whereof, that prince was arrived to the port, and just ready to embark; but being kept back a day or two by contrary winds, advice was brought him, that a conspiracy had been discover'd against the person of King *William*, which was to have broke out, exactly at the time when the *French* were to land in the kingdom.

Q. What steps did King *James* take, when news was brought to him of it?

A. Instead of pursuing his point, as one would have naturally thought he should have done, had he rely'd entirely upon his personal bravery; the strength of his fleet; his land forces; and the adherents he had in the kingdom, who could not be much lessen'd in number, since not above 30 or 40 persons were seiz'd: he, I say, instead of this, waited for the event; but when he found that the King's person was out of danger, and that he must be obliged to meet him once again in the field, no farther mention was made of crossing the seas, and the soldiers, with their commander, withdrew without having done any thing.

Q. Did not these several attempts which were made against the King's life, exasperate him so far as to make him endeavour to revenge himself by force of arms, and such like just methods?

A. His magnanimous spirit, which prompted him to sacrifice his own private interests to his people's ease, made him not discover the least emotion upon that account; for he carried on the war with the same moderation as before, and pardon'd most of those guilty wretches, who were prepar'd to plunge a dagger in his heart.

Q. In what manner did he receive the proposals for peace which the *French* made him?

A.

A. As the war had affected him no farther than his Kingly dignity; and that nothing personal had happen'd in this great quarrel.

Q. Consequently his equity and justice contributed very much to the concluding of this peace?

A. The world was wholly oblig'd to him for it; for he had a thousand ways to prevent its coming to a conclusion, and was in a much better condition to carry on a war than the *French King*; notwithstanding which, when he saw that the security of his subjects was no longer endanger'd, he gloriously postpon'd his fame and reputation, and studiously endeavour'd to conquer the aversion and resentments of the rest of the allies.

Q. As this peace redounded so much to his glory, was it not also of great advantage to him?

A. Undoubtedly, since it secur'd him in the possession of three kingdoms, which the affection of his subjects had bestow'd upon him, and which he had so bravely defended with his sword; not to mention that it procur'd him the restitution of his principality, which he claim'd by hereditary right, and whereof he had been unjustly dispossest'd.

Q. Did not he also contribute very much to the restitutions that were made to the rest of the allies?

A. We may justly affirm, that they were entirely owing to his bravery and conduct, the reasons whereof are so notorious, that it would be needless to mention them in this place; I shall only observe, that he had not so much reason to be dissatisfy'd with the *French King* as might be imagin'd: for to consider things in their true light, it was he who seated him on the throne, and rais'd him to the highest pitch of glory; for had he not intermeddled in the *English* affairs, *King James*, and his spiritual directors, would never have attempted to overthrow the laws of the kingdom, and to extirpate the establish'd religion thereof; had he not begun a war in *Germany* and in *Flanders*, no one would have been bold enough to have declar'd it against him; he would have been left in the peaceable enjoyment of so many strong holds and provinces which he was oblig'd to restore, and of so many fortresses he had demolish'd; there was

no probability of any one's being formidable enough either to dispute his possessions, or to take them from him by force of arms; in time they would have been consider'd as his own territories; and in all human probability, King *William* would have died prince of *Orange*, and divested of his principality.

Q. Where was this famous treaty concluded, which gave peace to *Europe*?

A. At *Raswick*, a palace belonging to King *William*, situated between the *Hague* and *Delft*, in *Holland*; a circumstance which reflects great honour on that prince; and is a manifest proof that he was consider'd as the arbiter of peace and war.

Q. Was the peace of *Europe* secur'd by this treaty?

A. King *William* considering that the death of the King of *Spain*, which was thought to be near at hand, would involve *Europe* in fresh troubles; and likewise that as the *English* had disbanded the greatest part of their forces, they would have no great Inclination to embark in another war; his Majesty took fresh measures in order to prevent the evils which threaten'd the *Christian* world, and concluded a treaty of partition with *France*, with respect to the *Spanish* succession, in case that King should die without issue.

Q. Did the *French* observe punctually this treaty, after the King of *Spain's* decease?

A. No.

Q. What measures did they take?

A. As there is great room to believe, that the sole motive of the *French* King's agreeing to this treaty of partition, was only to amuse King *William* and the *United Provinces*; immediately after the King of *Spain's* death, *Lewis XIV.* seiz'd upon the whole *Spanish* monarchy, by virtue of the last will and testament, which his ambassador at *Madrid*, in conjunction with cardinal *Portocarrero*, had caused his *Catholick* majesty to make.

Q. What turn did the court of *France* give to this violation of the partition-treaty?

A. The *French* ministers declar'd, that their master had neglected the letter of the treaty, and stuck to the spirit of it.

Q. Was King *William* satisfy'd with this interpretation?

A. He conceal'd for some time his deep resentments, for the affront which had been put upon him; and having form'd a new alliance, he shew'd the *English* their real and genuine interests, and was preparing to revenge himself on *Lewis XIV.* by open force, and to settle the ballance of *Europe*; when a fall from his horse, by hastening his death, put an end to all his great designs.

Q. When did this great prince die?

A. The 8th of *March*, 1701. in the 53d year of his age, and the 14th of his reign.

Q. Pray describe the person and qualities of this monarch?

A. I shall herein borrow the words of the abovementioned author, who furnish'd us with the character of King *James II.* King *William* was of a middle stature, but ill-shap'd, and somewhat round-shoulder'd; he had an oval face; a light-brown complexion; a *Roman* nose; his eyes lively and piercing; his constitution was weak and infirm; he never look'd so well as on horseback, as if nature had form'd him to command in the field.

But the defects of his body were compensated by the perfections of his mind; he had a quick, ready, attentive, and penetrating wit; a sound judgment; an admirable forecast, a strong memory, and a calm and intrepid courage. His health had not permitted him to apply himself much to study when young; yet besides *Dutch*, which was his native language, he spoke *French* to a great perfection, and *English* and *German* tolerably well. He had some knowledge of the mathematicks and fortification; but that in which he was best skill'd, was the art of war. He had a perfect knowledge of the different interests of the princes of *Europe*, which supplied him with fresh projects and shifts, in those intricacies, where the most able statesmen were at a stand. He was extremely reserv'd; and if at any time he appear'd free and communicative, 'twas rather to discover the secrets of others, than to reveal his own. He was easy of access, and gave a favourable hearing to every body. His temper was always the same, both in good, and in adverse

adverse fortune; being neither elevated by the one, or depressed by the other. He always pursued his ends, in spite of whatever obstacles might rise up in his way; and understood as well to start, as to make use of opportunities: he was indefatigable in the field, and in the cabinet; seldom trusting to his generals or his secretaries, but gave out his orders with his own mouth, and writ all dispatches of any importance with his own hand. He was ambitious; but his ambition was regulated by prudence, and founded on justice; and he never aspir'd after grandeur, but in order to make his people happy by his elevation.

But these fine qualities were not without some alloy; he was covetous to a fault, and wherever he exerted his liberality, it was in the most profuse manner; as he knew little how to reward, he knew as little how to punish; his clemency being sometimes as ill plac'd, as at other times his severity. He was of a choleric constitution, which made him a little peevish; but when these short passionate fits were over, he was the kindest master in the world.

War was his greatest delight, and hunting and shooting were his usual diversions; and if at any time he play'd at any game of chance, 'twas only out of complaisance. He lov'd the company of witty men, and had a particular affection for Monsieur de *St. Evremont*. His ear was turn'd to no other musick than the clangor of the trumpet, or the sound of the drum; he had no taste for poetry, had some skill in painting, and loved to see good pictures; but never encourag'd painters, or any who excell'd in the liberal arts.

As to his religion, he profess'd that of *Calvin* whilst he was prince of *Orange*; and altho' when he was King of *England* he publickly profess'd the establish'd religion, he always retain'd a great tenderness for *Dissenters*, and would never suffer any person to be persecuted for his belief. His piety was sincere, and unaffected.

In a word, *William-Henry of Nassau*, Prince of *Orange* and King of *Great-Britain*, was the greatest man of his age ; and may be put in parallel with the greatest heroes of antiquity. He had the most consummate knowledge in the arts of war, and policy ; fearless in danger ; constant in his projects ; moderate in prosperity ; unshaken in adversity ; wise in his councils ; bold at the head of his armies ; faithful to his friends ; the terror of his enemies ; and the delight of his subjects. He always declar'd himself an enemy to tyranny and oppression ; and after having preserv'd his own country, was the deliverer of *England*, and the defender of the freedom of *Europe*.

QUEEN ANNE, L. Sovereign of *England*,
and VI. of *Great-Britain*.

By Mr. Boyer.

Emperors.

LEOPOLD 1658
JOSEPH 1705
CHARLES 1711

Pope.

CLEMENT XI. 1700
King of France.
LEWIS XIV. 1643.

Q. DID not the death of this great prince whom you now describ'd, occasion some changes in *England*, and the posture of affairs in *Europe*?

A. It at first cast a great damp upon such of the *English* as had been friends to the late King, who were distinguished by the name of *Whigs* ; and threw the *Dutch* into the utmost consternation. But *Anne Stuart*, second daughter of King *James II.* known by the name of the princess of *Denmark*, who succeeded King *William III.* soon remov'd all their Fears, by her declaring that she was firmly resolv'd to carry on the same design which her predecessor had form'd, in order to restore the balance of power in *Europe*.

Q. What was this design ?

A. To oblige the King of *France* to recall his grandson, whom he had seated on the throne of *Spain* ; and to bestow that Kingdom on *Charles*, the Emperor *Leopold's* second

second Son. This was the chief motive of the grand alliance which King *William* form'd with the *Emperor* and the *States-General* in 1701. and to which the Kings of *Prussia* and *Portugal*, the Duke of *Savoy*, and several other princes afterwards acceded.

Q. Did Queen *Anne* herself form this signal resolution?

A. It being debated in the privy-council, whether war should be declared against *France* and *Spain*, it was carried for the affirmative by a plurality of voices.

Q. Consequently it met with some opposition in the council?

A. It consisted of two different parties; the *Tories*, or the rigid friends to episcopacy; and the *Whigs*, or those of a moderate temper. The former, who were headed by the earl of *Rocheſter*, uncle to the Queen by the mother's side, were for engaging in the war no otherwise than as auxiliaries; but the *Whigs*, the chief whereof were the dukes of *Devonshire* and *Somerſet*, insisted that it was absolutely necessary to make good the engagements, by which the late King had bound himself; and the earl of *Marlborough*, the Queen's favourite, seconded by the earl of *Pembroke*, made the scale turn on the *Whigs* side, and accordingly war was proclaim'd.

Q. What was the success thereof?

A. An almost uninterrupted series of prosperities, victories, and triumphs, on the side of the high-allies, and on that of the *English* in particular, for nine years successively.

Q. What were the most memorable transactions in *Flanders* in 1702?

A. The *French* army having taken the field early, under the command of the marshal *Boufflers*, drove the forces of the allies to the very gates of *Nimeguen*; but no sooner had the lord *Marlborough* put himself at the head of the confederate army, than the *French* were oblig'd to fly in their turn, and to keep on the defensive; and they were dispossess'd of the places they held in the *Spanish-Guelderland*, viz. *Venlo*, *Ruremonde*, and *Stevenswart*, after which they took the city and citadel of *Liege*.

Q. What were the united fleets of *England* and *Holland* doing all this while?

A. A resolution had been taken to execute a project form'd by King *William* for the storming of *Cadiz*, and accordingly a good number of land-forces were shipp'd off under the command of the duke of *Ormond*; but whether it were through the fault of some of the generals, who bent all their thoughts on the plunder of port *St. Mary*, or to the division, that arose between Sir *George Rook* the *English* admiral, and the general of the land-forces, the attempt upon *Cadiz* came to nothing.

Q. What action did the fleet perform in its return homewards?

A. The admiral being inform'd by Mr. *Beauvoir* the chaplain of the *Pembroke*, that a *French* Squadron under the command of Monsieur *Chateau-Regnault*, and several *Spanish* galleons, richly laden, were arrived at *Vigo*; he, in concert with the duke of *Ormond*, attack'd them, and took or burnt them all: after which the fleet return'd into *England*, laden with plunder to the value of upwards of a million sterling.

Q. What were the transactions in 1703?

A. The duke of *Marlborough* open'd the campaign with the siege of the important town of *Bonne*, which though extremely well fortify'd, and defended by a numerous garrison, was nevertheless reduced in a few days. Afterwards the *French* standing upon the defensive within the lines in *Brabant*, the lord *Marlborough* besieged and carried the town and castle of *Huy*; after which the *English* general propos'd the attacking the *French* in their lines; but that point being debated, it was judg'd impracticable, so that they were oblig'd to end the campaign with the siege and conquest of *Limburgh*.

Q. Why did not the *French* exert themselves this year in the *Low Countries*?

A. Their policy was to stand on the defensive, while their superiority in *Italy*, on the *Rhine*, and in the very heart of the *Empire*, gave them the most signal advantages. For while the duke of *Marlborough* was pursuing his triumphs in *Flanders*, prince *Eugene* had left *Italy*, in order to solicit reinforcements at the court of

Vienna;

Vienna; the duke of *Savoy*, who had lately enter'd into the grand alliance, was in the utmost danger of being forced out of his dominions, had he not been immediately succour'd, in an almost miraculous manner, by count *Staremberg*. Count *Tallard* had made himself master of the town of *Brisac*, and retaken the strong fortress of *Landau*, after having defeated the army at *Spire*; and the elector of *Bavaria*, either from a principle of ambition or resentment, having declar'd in favour of *France*, had seized the imperial cities of *Ulm*, *Ratisbon*, *Ausburg*, and *Passau*; and being strongly supported by great supplies of men and money from *France*, made the whole empire tremble, and threatned to march directly to *Vienna*.

Q. What was done in this delicate juncture ?

A. The queen of *England*, with the advice of her ministers, took the generous resolution of saving the *Empire*; and the duke of *Marlborough*, the principal author of this project, having prevailed with the *States-General* to concur in it, he put himself at the head of the confederate army; march'd into *Germany* with incredible speed; drove the *French* and *Bavarians* from the entrenchments which they had raised at *Schellenberg*, to hinder him from passing the *Danube*; took the city of *Donawert*, situated on the *Danube*; and being afterwards joined by a considerable body of forces under the command of prince *Eugene*, these two illustrious warriors attack'd, a few days after, the *French* and *Bavarians* at *Blenheim* or *Hochstet*, where they gained a most signal and compleat victory, after which they drove the *French* out of *Germany*, reduc'd *Landau*, and conquer'd all *Bavaria*.

Q. Was the duke of *Marlborough* well rewarded for the great and important services he had done the *Empire* ?

A. Not to mention the principality of *Mindelheim* which the Emperor bestow'd upon him; the rich trophies which he brought from *Bavaria*, and the considerable presents that were made him by several *German* princes; at his return to *England* he was honour'd with the applauses of both houses of parliament; and the Queen gave him *Woodstock* park, where, at her own ex-

pence, he built him the noble palace of *Blenheim*, to perpetuate the memory of his victory; but he had the mortification to see the *Tories*, who envy'd his glory, lessen his services, by putting those of admiral *Rook* in competition with them, who after having taken *Gibraltar*, engag'd the *French* fleet, commanded by count de *Toulouse*, when the victory remained doubtful.

Q. Were the allies equally successful in all parts this year?

A. Very far from it; for notwithstanding that *England* and *Holland* sent succours to the *Portuguese*, they nevertheless were not able to hinder the *Spaniards* from making some conquests; and the *French* in *Italy* dispossest the duke of *Savoy* of several strong holds.

Q. What actions did the duke of *Marlborough* perform in 1705?

A. He first march'd towards the *Moselle*, at the head of the best part of the confederate army, in order to execute a great design on that side; but whether it were the death of the emperor *Leopold*, which happening at that juncture, retarded the preparations which the *Germans* were to make; or from their usual slowness, prince *Lewis* of *Baden* having fail'd the *English* general, by not sending the troops, artillery, and other necessaries, the *Empire* had engag'd itself to furnish for the siege of *Saar-Lewis*; the duke of *Marlborough* was obliged to return with great precipitation into *Flanders*.

Q. Did not the *French* make an advantage of his absence?

A. So well, that they soon recover'd *Huy* and *Liege*; but while they were taking measures, in order to prevent the return of the duke into the *Low Countries*, that able general got the start of them by his prodigious diligence; drove them out of *Liege*; dispossest them of *Huy*, and forc'd them to retreat within their lines, which they level'd, and by that means put a great extent of country under contribution; and the *Dutch* Frontiers were extended by the taking of *Leeve* and *Santoliet*; but whilst they were attacking the latter, which was a very inconsiderable place, the *French* surpriz'd the garrison of *Diest*.

Q. What was done in Germany?

A. The sudden retreat of the duke of Marlborough from the *Moselle*, having puff'd up the courage of the *French* on that side, they recover'd *Treves* and *Homburgh*, and attack'd the camp at *Lauterburgh*; but the *Germans*, who defended it, having gallantly oppos'd the marshals de *Villars* and *Marson*, till such time as prince *Lewis* of *Baden* had drawn together forces sufficient to reinforce them; they forc'd the *French* from their lines, and dispossest them of *Drusenheim*, *Haguenau*, and other posts; and the *Germans* extended even their quarters into the enemy's country.

Q. Were the allies as successful in Portugal?

A. The earl of *Galway* had succeeded duke *Schomberg* in the command of the *English* forces in that country; and having by his prudence and vigilance restor'd order to the confederate army, fortune at first prov'd pretty favourable to them, by their taking of *Salvatierra* and *Marvao*, and dispossesting the *Spaniards* of *Sarens*, *Valencia d'Almontara*, and *Albuquerque*; but they fail'd in their main design, which was the reducing of *Badajoz*; by the unhappy accident which happen'd to my lord *Galway*, who lost his right hand; and was thereby oblig'd to leave the direction of that siege to baron *Fagel*, whom marshal de *Tesse* oblig'd to raise it.

Q. Did any remarkable transaction happen in other parts?

A. The most memorable incident this year, was the reducing the city of *Barcelona*, and of the whole province of *Catalonia*, to the obedience of King *Charles III.* this great project had been form'd by the prince of *Hesse d'Armstadt*; but, notwithstanding that this prince had been unfortunately slain in the attack of *Montjuich*; the earl of *Peterborough*, who, as some pretend, had first disapprov'd of the enterprize upon *Catalonia*, carried it on with so much vigour and resolution, when he saw that the ice was broke, and that he himself would reap all the glory of the success; that having made himself master of *Barcelona* in a few days, the whole principality submitted to him, and implor'd the protection of Queen *Anne*.

Q. Why did not the *French* send immediately a strong force to succour *Catalonia*?

A. They were attack'd from so many quarters, that it was impossible for them to make head against all; not to mention that they follow'd a plan this year, that did not meet with success; which was to end the war in *Italy*, that exhausted them both of men and money; and keeping upon the defensive in all other parts, they exerted all their efforts, in order to oppress and reduce the duke of *Savoy*; but that prince stood his ground with the most heroic bravery, and the campaign of 1706 chang'd the whole face of affairs.

Q. What were the chief events thereof?

A. *France*, that never fails of new resources, had in the beginning of the year form'd three great projects; whereof the first was totally to ruin King *Charles's* party in *Spain*; the second, to dispossess the allies of all their conquests in the *Low-Countries*; and the third, to put an end to the war in *Italy*, by pushing prince *Eugene* back into the *Trentin*, and by driving the duke of *Savoy* out of his capital; which was the only city that was left him in all his dominions.

Q. Did these great projects meet with success?

A. No; they all miscarried: in the first place, Sir *John Leake* being arrived very seasonably to succour *Barcelona*; and upon his approach, having oblig'd the count de *Toulouse* to retire with the utmost precipitation, who, with the *French* fleet, kept the town block'd up by sea; King *Philip*, and the marshal de *Tessé*, who were carrying on the siege thereof by land, were oblig'd to raise it with so much the more haste, as the earl of *Peterborough* began to harraß them with a body of troops which he had just got together: this event happen'd the 12th of *May*, N. S. a day very remarkable from the Sun's suffering a total eclipse. In the second place, eleven days after, the duke of *Marlborough* entirely defeated at *Ramilies* the *French* army, commanded by the duke of *Bavaria* and the marshal de *Villeroy*, which victory was follow'd by a general revolution in the *Low-Countries*, where an uninterrupted series of conquests attended the confederate army. And in the
third

third place, prince *Eugene* having by his great ability remov'd all the obstacles that had been laid in his way; and by one of the most memorable marches that was ever known, having join'd the duke of *Savoy*; these two princes attack'd the *French* army commanded by the duke of *Orleans*, and the Marshal de *Marfin*, with so much resolution and bravery, even in their very trenches, that he totally routed them. This event, which happen'd the 7th of *September*, N. S. was immediately followed by the relieving of *Turin*, which after having sustain'd a long siege, was reduc'd to the utmost extremities; and some time after, with the total expulsion of the *French* out of all *Italy*; a bitter pill to swallow, tho' they gilded it by a treaty made at *Milan*, by which they engag'd themselves to evacuate all the strong holds, which they possess'd in *Lombardy* in King *Philip's* name.

②. What became of this prince after the fatal blow he receiv'd at *Barcelona*?

A. He would never have return'd again into *Spain*, had the allies but made their advantage of the favourable opportunity with which they were presented, of conquering the whole kingdom. 'Tis true indeed, that the marquis *das Minas* and the earl of *Galway*, who commanded the confederate army, after having reduc'd *Alcantara*, *Placentia*, and some other places, marched immediately to *Madrid*; but instead of going thither, to join them with the same dispatch, whether it were owing to a misunderstanding that happen'd between King *Charles's* first minister and the earl of *Peterborough*; or from the jealousy which the latter had of my lord *Galway*, and the apprehensions he was under that he would deprive him of the glory of conquering all *Spain*; King *Charles* went to pay his devotions very unseasonably at *Notre Dame de Montserrat*, and afterwards to make a useless visit to the city of *Saragossa*; while, on the other side, the earl of *Peterborough* amus'd himself, to almost as little purpose, in the kingdom of *Valencia*. Thus neither of them join'd the *Portuguese* army, till after it had, for a long time, spent itself in vain, in the neighbourhood of *Madrid*, and in the camp
of

of *Guadalaxara*; and that they had given King Philip time to return into *Spain*, at the Head of a vigorous and superior army, which oblig'd the allies to retire with great precipitation into *Valencia*.

Q. What were the remarkable incidents in 1707?

A. This year plainly show'd the vicissitude of all human affairs; for the *French* having made greater efforts to recover their losses, than the Allies did to improve their victories; fortune seem'd to declare in favour of the former. In *Spain*, the earl of *Galway*, having attack'd, very unseasonably, and against the advice of the earl of *Peterborough*, the *Spanish* army at *Almanza*, commanded by the Duke of *Berwick*, and much superior in number to his own; he was entirely defeated, and oblig'd to retire into *Catalonia*, with the shatter'd remains of his army, and to abandon the kingdom of *Valencia*. This victory having puff'd up the hearts of the *Spaniards*, they dispossest the *Portuguese* of *Serpa* and *Moura*, and afterwards retook *Cindad Rodrigo*; while the duke of *Orleans* took the city of *Lerida*. On another side, marshal *Villars* having forc'd the lines and retrenchments of the *Germans* at *Biehl* and *Stolhoffen*, and exacted heavy contributions from the dutchy of *Wirtemberg*, would infallibly have push'd the conquests of his victorious army, if the elector of *Hanover*, late King of *Great-Britain*, who took upon himself the command of the forces of the empire, (reinforc'd by the *Saxons* whom the duke of *Marlborough* sent to him) had not stopp'd the progress of his arms; or rather, if he had not been oblig'd to send off large detachments in order to save *Toulon*, to which the duke of *Savoy* and prince *Eugene*, assisted by the *English* fleet under the command of Sir *Cloudesty Shovel*, had laid siege. The *English* were so much the more affected with the ill success of this enterprize, as the duke of *Marlborough* endeavour'd in vain to bring the *French* to an engagement in *Flanders*, who always kept in inaccessible intrenchments. In fine, the Emperor was the only sovereign among the confederates, who this year knew how to fish in troubled waters; for whilst that his friends and enemies were employ'd in other parts, his forces

forces made the conquest of the kingdom of *Naples*. But Queen *Anne* gain'd also a particular advantage this year, by the union of the two kingdoms of *England* and *Scotland*, which was happily compleated in 1706. And notwithstanding the various ill success of the last campaign, the two houses of the first parliament of *Great-Britain*, as a testimony of their zeal and affection, presented an address to her Majesty, wherein they declar'd, *That no peace could be safe or honourable, for her majesty, or her allies, if Spain and the West-Indies were suffered to remain under the power of the house of Bourbon.*

Q. What steps did *Lewis XIV.* take upon the news thereof?

A. He resolv'd to make the authors of that address repent of what they had done; and being puff'd up with the small advantages he had gain'd in 1707, he form'd two great projects for the year 1708. The first was the making the dominions of the Queen of *Great-Britain* the seat of the war, and to set the *Pretender*, whom he consider'd in quality of King *James III.* upon the throne: and the second, to drive the allies from the conquests they had made after the battle of *Ramellies*. But both these enterprizes met with an ill success equal to the rashness with which they had been undertaken; and fortune, which the foregoing year seem'd to waver, now turn'd the scale in favour of the grand alliance. The *English* having put a strong squadron to sea under the command of Sir *George Byng*, much earlier than the *French* expected; the *Pretender*, who was on board the *French* fleet, did but just show himself on the Coasts of *Scotland*, without daring to go ashore; and found himself very happy in having escap'd the pursuit of the *English*, since they took several of his officers. But notwithstanding this disappointment, the *French* gain'd their point in *Flanders*, where the credit which the elector of *Bavaria* had still preserv'd in that country; together with the artful management of the count *de Berghoyck*, so far influenc'd the inhabitants of *Ghent* and *Bruges*, that they immediately open'd their gates to the *French* troops; the dukes of *Vendosme* and *Burgundy*, who

who commanded them, having gain'd a day's march over the duke of *Marlborough*, would infallibly have very much perplex'd the allies, had not monsieur *Labene*, governour of the castle of *Ghent*, amus'd the enemy two days. While these things were doing, prince *Eugene* join'd the duke of *Marlborough* with a strong reinforcement of *Imperialists*; and these two brave warriors having march'd with great diligence to the camp at *Lessines*; pass'd the *Dender*, and afterwards the *Schelde* at *Oudenarde*, came up with the *French* near this last place, which they had flatter'd themselves they should have carried, before the confederates had advanc'd to succour them. The *French* generals might have avoided coming to a battle, but depending on the advantage of the ground, and the superiority of their forces, they resolv'd to venture, but had occasion to repent it; for victory declar'd in favour of the allies, and knew no other heroes than those she had crown'd with never-fading laurels at *Blenheim*, *Ramillies*, and *Turin*. As the ground gave scarce but the infantry an opportunity of engaging, that of the *French* was soon broken and routed; and would have been entirely defeated, if the night had not favour'd the retreat of the scatter'd remains of the *French* Army, who withdrew to *Ghent* and *Bruges*, in order to take breath. The princes of *France* and the *Presender*, were the fatal witnesses to this defeat; but the Prince of *Hanover*, now King of *Great-Britain*, who was in the confederate army, fought with the utmost bravery, and won immortal glory. This action happen'd the 11th of *July*, N. S. some time after which, the victors went and laid siege to *Lisle*, a city of great importance. An enterprize of so bold a nature surpriz'd all *Europe*, and alarm'd the *French*, who exerted themselves to the utmost, in order to prevent its succeeding. And their generals, notwithstanding that they were reinforc'd by the garrisons of several places, which the duke of *Berwick* brought them; did not yet dare attack the army under the duke of *Marlborough's* command, which cover'd the siege; but contented themselves with cutting from the allies all communication with *Brussels*,

Brussels, which supply'd them with all their ammunition and provisions. Upon this the duke of *Marlborough* thought of an expedient; for having sent for a small body of forces, which, under the command of general *Erle*, had alarm'd the coasts of *France*, and which took post at *Leffingen*; he by that means open'd a communication with *Ostend*, whence he sent for a considerable convoy of all necessaries. The duke of *Vendome* having notice of it, sent Monsieur de la *Motte* at the head of 40000 men, in order to intercept it; but general *Webb*, whom the duke of *Marlborough* had dispatch'd with 6000 men to guard the convoy, totally routed the *French* at *Wynendale*; when the convoy being happily arrived at the camp of the allies, the city of *Lisle* surrender'd some days after, viz. on the 23d. of *October*, 1708. N. S. and as they were tender of the lives of a brave set of men, and willing to preserve a work so perfect in its kind, as the citadel of *Lisle*; they only carried it on by *sea*. Upon this the *French* redoubled their efforts, in order to distress the allies. The duke of *Vendome*, after having won the post at *Leffingen*, and cut off the communication of the allies with *Ostend*, by great inundations between *Bruges* and *Newport*, and by their intrenchments along the *Schelde*, sent several parties into the field, in order to harass the *Dutch*, and particularly to plunder and ravage the district of *Bois-le-duc*. But the generals of the allies being indefatigably intent upon their business, and the duke of *Marlborough* having found means to provide provisions out of the country of *Antois*, and the districts of *Furne* and *Dixmude*; the elector of *Bavaria*, as his last shift, march'd to attack *Brussels* at the head of 15000 chosen men: but general *Pascal*, the governour of *Brussels*, sustain'd all the attacks of the enemy with so much resolution and bravery; and prince *Eugene* and the duke of *Marlborough* having routed the *French* who guarded the *Schelde*; came, or rather flew, so seasonably to their assistance, that the duke of *Bavaria* was obliged to retire with the utmost precipitation.

* Nov. 27. N. S.

T

and confusion; and some days after, marshal *Boufflers* surrendr'd the city of *Lille* upon honourable* terms. 'Tis very probable, that the *French* being of opinion that as the season was so far advanc'd, the allies would content themselves with the conquest of that important place; they thereupon separated their army; but the duke of *Marlborough* and prince *Eugene*, who were affected with the loss of *Ghent*, resolv'd to take it before the end of the campaign. They invest'd it the 20th of *December*, N. S. open'd the trenches the 24th, and notwithstanding the great severity of the winter, they oblig'd Monsieur de la *Motte* to surrender up the town the 31st, notwithstanding that he had 30 battalions and 19 squadrons. The reduction of *Ghent* was follow'd with the enemy's abandoning *Bruges*, *Flussendael*, and *Issingen*; and in the whole we may justly affirm, that tho' we trace all the modern historians, we shall not find a campaign carried on to so unusual a length, or so renown'd for a continued series of memorable actions, as that whereof we have given a general idea.

What remarkable transactions happen'd this year in other parts of *Europe*;

A. The duke of *Savoy*, like an able politician, laid hold of this favourable opportunity of revenging himself upon *France*; and having eluded the vigilance of marshal *Villars*, who was order'd to oppose his march over mount *Cenis*, as if his royal highness had intended to penetrate into *Dauphine*, he dispossest the *French*, who made little resistance, of the forests of *Exillet*, *Font la Perouse*, the valley of *St. Martin*, and *Feneffallet*. By these conquests this prince secur'd his own dominions against *France*, and gain'd a free entrance into the enemy's country; and besides this great advantage, he made a fortunate diversion in favour of *Charles III.* so that as the duke of *Nadille* was oblig'd to send a detachment to reinforce marshal *Villars*, he was by that means prevented from making any detachment upon *Roussillon*. 'Tis true indeed, that the duke of *Orleans* dispossest the allies of the city of *Tortosa*; and the chevalier d'*Has-*

field

held those of *Denia* and *Alicant*; but Sir *John Leake* and general *Stanbop* gain'd much greater advantages over King *Philip*; the former by reducing the fruitful island and kingdom of *Sardinia*, to the obedience of King *Charles*; and the latter by the conquest of *Port Mahon*, and of the whole island of *Minorca*, which he took care to preserve for the *British* nation. On the other side, the *Spaniards* having kept upon the defensive in *Estremadura*; the *Portuguese* army, reinforc'd with some *English* troops, put *Moura* and *Serpa*, which had been abandon'd by the enemies, into a state of defence; and made an incursion into *Andalusia*, where they got some plunder. The only remarkable transaction that happen'd in *Germany*, was, that the elector of *Hanover*, with some indifferent forces of the *Empire*, who were but ill provided, baffled the design which the duke of *Bavaria* had form'd of penetrating into the *Empire*; in so much that the latter, finding he could do nothing in *Alsacia*, went, about the end of the campaign, and attack'd *Brussels*, but with ill success. But whilst *Mars* and *Bellona* were thus spreading the wild havoc of war in all places, *Cupid* resum'd his wonted power; and *Hymen* brought about several marriages in different courts of *Europe*. King *Charles* married the princess of *Wolfenbuttle*, the most accomplished lady in *Germany*; *John* King of *Portugal*, who two years before had succeeded his father *Don Pedro*, the archduchess *Mary Anne*, King *Charles's* sister; and the King of *Prussia*, the princess dowager of *Mecklenburgh-Swerin*. But while these three courts were full of joy, that of *Great-Britain* was in deep sorrow and affliction, for the death of prince *George* of *Denmark*; a wise, just, and kind prince, who, with his consort *Queen Anne*, was a most perfect pattern of conjugal affection; who lov'd the *English* nation, was belov'd by them, and was universally regretted. Besides this, the year 1708 is remarkable for several great events; the *Muscovites* gain'd several advantages over the *Swedes*; the *Electo Palatine* was restor'd to the possession of the *Upper Palatinate*, with the same rank and title that had been vested in the house of *Bavaria* by the treaty of *Munster*; the elector of *Brunswick-Lunenburg*

burgh or *Hanover*, was at last acknowledg'd such by the electoral college; the duke of *Savoy* receiv'd the investiture of *Mantua* and *Monferrat*; the ban of the *Empire* was publish'd against the duke of *Mantua*; and lastly, by the good offices and powerful solicitations of *Great-Britain* and *Holland*, the succession to the principality of *Neufchatel* was decided in favour of the King of *Prussia*.

Q. What were the transactions of the year 1709?

A. The King of *France*, finding that instead of having succeeded in his last projects, the allies had gain'd fresh advantages over the two crowns, listens at last to the voice of his subjects, who, oppress'd with the havoc of war, and famine, besought him to procure them peace and bread; and by the interposition of Monsieur *Pethum*, the minister of *Holstein*, a negotiation was carried on at the *Hague*.

Q. What was the success thereof?

A. The president de *Rouillé*, and the marquis de *Torcy*, with the ministers of the *Emperor*, of *Great-Britain*, and the *States General*, agreed on forty articles preliminary to a general peace; but as it was stipulated by one of these articles, that King *Philip* should yield up and quit *Spain* in two months; *Lewis XIV.* could not acquiesce with such hard, and in some measure, impracticable, conditions; and therefore did not think himself oblig'd to ratify the preliminaries which his ministers had sign'd: and in order to raise the indignation of his Subjects against the exorbitant demands of his allies, and thereby encourage the former to submit with patience to the burthens and calamities of war; his most *Christian Majesty* wrote circular letters to the prelates of his kingdom, and the governors of his provinces, containing the reasons which hinder'd his subjects from enjoying the tranquility he had endeavour'd to procure them.

Q. What measures did the allies take on this occasion?

A. Incens'd at the equivocal proceedings of the *French*, they resolv'd to improve their last advantages, and to prosecute the war with vigour. Accordingly.

ingly prince *Eugene* and the duke of *Marlborough* put themselves at the head of the confederate army, and march'd towards the enemy, whom they found entrench'd in the plain of *Lens*, under the command of marshal *Villars*; but finding it impossible to bring them to an engagement, they besieg'd the important city of *Tournay*, and in two months from the first opening of the trenches the city and citadel was surrender'd to them. Some days after the allies attack'd the *French*, who being advantageously encamp'd, and entrench'd at *Malplaquet*, and fighting with great bravery under the command of marshals *de Villars* and *Boufflers*, repuls'd the confederates several times, and made a dreadful slaughter of the *Dutch* infantry; but at last they were oblig'd to submit to the vigour and superior bravery of the *English*, who headed by the earl of *Orkney*, general *Withers*, the duke of *Argyle*, and some other young noblemen, drove the *French* from their strongest entrenchments, and open'd a passage to the cavalry of the allies, who soon oblig'd those of the enemy to give way. Marshal *de Villars*, in the heat of the engagement, having receiv'd a dangerous wound, which had incapacitated him from acting, marshal *de Boufflers* made an orderly retreat, like a brave and experienced captain. Thus victory attended on the confederate arms, but it cost them dear; however it was soon crown'd with the taking of *Mons*, which the *French* would fain have cover'd.

Q Did the high allies triumph equally in all places?

A Nothing, or worse than nothing, was done in *Germany*; which at last oblig'd the elector of *Hanover* to lay down his command, as his army was in a weak condition, and in want of all necessaries. The campaign in *Piedmont* and *Dauphiné*, fell very much short of expectation, by reason of the disputes that arose between the courts of *Vienna* and *Turin*, with respect to the claim which the duke of *Savoy* laid to some dependencies

Aug. 31. N. S. to Sept. 11. N. S. 1701
They lost 18000 men, and the French 15000.

pendencies of the *Milanese*. The *Spaniards* under the command of the marquis de *Bay*, defeated the *Portuguese* on the banks of the *Caya*; and the earl of *Galway*, who had been always unsuccessful since the unfortunate battle of *Almanza*, very narrowly escap'd being taken prisoner. Some days before lieutenant-general *Stanhope* advanc'd with the *English* fleet, in order to succour the castle of *Alicans*; but finding it impracticable, he caus'd it to be surrender'd upon honourable terms, in order to save the lives of the few brave men that remain'd alive, and who had behav'd with the utmost intrepidity. On the other side, general *Staremberg*, who the year before had check'd the progress of the duke of *Orleans's* arms in *Catalonia*, made himself master of *Balaguer*, where he took a great number of prisoners. Besides the abovementioned events relating to the grand alliance, the year 1709 will be memorable for the signal victory which the *Czar* of *Muscovy* gain'd at *Pultowa* the 8th of *July* N. S. over the King of *Sweden*, whose army having been entirely defeated, that unfortunate prince was obliged to fly for shelter into the *Turkish* territories, where he was received with greater humanity than he would perhaps have met with among the *Christians*.

Q. What were the transactions of 1710?

A. As soon as the campaign in 1709 was ended in *Flanders*, the *French* made new overtures of peace, and Monsieur *Petkum* was again employ'd for renewing the negotiations; but the conferences which were held at *Gertruydenberg*, were as unsuccessful as those of the *Hague* had been the preceding year; and the ministers of *France* withdrew, but not without discovering some resentments against those of the *States-General*, who carried on the negotiations in the name of the rest of the allies, upon pretence that due respect had not been shewn to their character.

Q. What was the true cause of the ill success of this second negotiation?

A. The *Dutch* strongly insisted, that King *Philip* should give up *Spain* and the *West-Indies*; but the *French*

French resolved they should remain in his power, and excited by the distractions which the famous Dr. *Sacchewerel* had raised in *England*, and having, by their emissaries, particularly by the *Abbé Gantier*, founded those who were bent upon the duke of *Marlborough's* ruin, and of those ministers who adhered to him: the *French*, I say, depending upon a sudden change in *England*, which might be favourable to their interests, would come to no other terms, than the engaging themselves to furnish a considerable sum of money, in order to oblige King *Philip* to quit *Spain*; and upon the refusal of the *Dutch* to accept of this offer, they suddenly broke up the conferences at *Gertruydenberg*:

Q. Upon this, what steps did the allies take?

A. The *Dutch* made loud complaints against the intriguing proceedings of the *French*, who under specious pretences, had eluded the fundamental point of the last negotiation; and Queen *Anna*, who had not as yet changed her views, with respect to the affairs of *Europe*, approved the conduct of the *States-General*. Thus the war was carried on, and prince *Eugene* and the duke of *Marlborough*, dispossess'd the *French* of the cities of *Doway*, *Bethune*, *S. Venant*, and *Aire*.

Q. What was transacted in other parts?

A. The elector of *Brunswick* having prudently laid down the command of the army of the empire; and the duke of *Savoy*, besides his discontent at the court of *Vienna*, being indispos'd, and incapable of acting, nothing was done worth taking notice of, either in *Germany* or *Piedmont*; but to make amends for this, the campaign was carried on very briskly in *Spain*, and was crown'd with great success: for King *Philip* having put himself at the head of his army, reinforced by some *Walloons*, advanc'd first towards *Balaguer*, making shew as if he intended to attack King *Charles*, who was encamp'd near that place, with a much inferior force. The armies continued for some days in sight of one another, without coming to an engagement; but no sooner were those of the allies join'd by the reinforcements which lieutenant-general *Stanhope* had brought from *Italy*, and some other troops from the *Lampar-*

Jan, than King *Charles* marched towards the enemies; and general *Stanhope* having pass'd the *Noguera* with great diligence, where he met with nineteen squadrons of *Spaniards*, supported by two brigades of foot, posted at *Almenara*, attack'd them with so much vigour and success, that in less than half an hour, with fifteen squadrons of horse and dragoons, he broke them, knock'd them one over another, put about 1500 of them to the sword; and would have gain'd a complete victory over them, if the night coming on had not favour'd their retreat under the cannon of *Lerida*. King *Charles*, in order to improve this advantage, pursued his competitor with incredible speed, and coming up with him near *Saragossa*, † totally routed his army, in sight of that city, where the conquerors entered in a triumphant manner. King *Philip*, who, by reason of his indisposition, had been prevented from coming to the battle, withdrew with a small guard; and the scatter'd remains of his army dispersed in different parts. Fortune favour'd the allies with a new opportunity of making themselves masters of all *Spain*, if they had known how to improve it; but instead of sending a considerable force towards *Navarre*, in order to intercept the succours which the duke of *Vendôme* was bringing to the vanquish'd; they march'd directly to *Madrid*, either from the hopes they had of plundering *Castile*, or of being reinforced by the *Portuguese*. Frustrated in the latter, and terrified with the apprehensions of being overpower'd by King *Philip's* forces, which increased daily, the allies took a resolution of retiring into *Catalonia*; but in their retreat, the enemy pursued them so close, that eight battalions, and as many squadrons of *English*, having very unseasonably fortified themselves in the little town of *Brihuega*, the duke of *Vendôme* attack'd them on a sudden, and oblig'd them to surrender themselves † prisoners of war. Upon the first news that general *Staremberg* heard of the danger the *English* were in, he march'd back, in order to succour them, with

27 July N.S. 1710. † 10 Aug N.S. 1710.

15 Dec N.S. 1710.

with the *Germans* and *Dutch*; but unfortunately meeting with the *Spanish* army near *Villa-Viciosa*, he was obliged to come to an engagement. The battle was hot and bloody, and was parted only by the night. The allies arrogated the victory to themselves; and indeed had some marks of it; but the *Spaniards* gather'd the fruits of it, and obliged them to quit *Arragon*, and fortify themselves in *Catalonia*. Thus the ill success of the allies at *Brihuega*, tarnish'd the laurels they had won at *Almenara* and *Saragossa*; and notwithstanding those two defeats, King *Philip* had the satisfaction and advantage to receive the most signal testimonies of the fidelity of the *Castilians*.

Q. How was this ill success taken in *England*?

A. The duke of *Marlborough's* friends were very much troubled at it; but those who were bent upon the ruin of that illustrious hero, were overjoy'd at it.

Q. What was their view in this?

A. They justly concluded, that the surest means to make him no longer useful, was to make a peace; and the ill success which had attended upon the arms of the allies in *Spain*, at the conclusion of this campaign, serv'd them for a handle to insinuate, that it was absolutely necessary to come to a peace; and also further'd the projects they had already concerted with the *French* agents.

Q. Who was at the head of this pacific cabal?

A. Mr. *Harley*, afterwards earl of *Oxford*; an able man, of an insinuating, ambitious, and vindictive temper; whose credit was great in the house of commons, who had chose him for their speaker in three successive parliaments; and who, notwithstanding his being dismiss'd from his post of secretary of state, had manag'd matters so well, as still to have free, tho' private access, to the queen, by the means of an artful, and insinuating woman, her majesty's favourite. This lady was very serviceable to him, in the revenge he took of those who had occasion'd his removal, after his having extricated them from the utmost difficulties.

Q. After what manner did he take his revenge?

A. He began by making the queen have an ill opinion of the *Whigs*, who, in the trial of Dr. *Sacheverell*, had deliver'd their notions, with great freedom, upon kingly dignity, and hereditary right. He afterwards observ'd to the queen, who was jealous of her authority, the prodigious power which the duke and dutchess of *Marlborough*, and their near relations had assumed to themselves in the administration, and in the disposal of favours and employments; and the little deference and respect which they shew'd, on different occasions, to her sacred majesty. Queen *Anne's* mind being thus prejudic'd, they began by removing the earl of *Sunderland*, son-in-law to the duke of *Marlborough*, from his post of secretary of state. The earl of *Godolphin*, whose only son had married the eldest daughter of the aforesaid duke, was quickly after removed from his post of lord high-treasurer to the next place, the *Whig* parliament, devoted to that minister, was dissolv'd, and a new one was call'd, which provid'd a Tory one; and at the devotion of the triumvirate, which govern'd in the queen's name till she died.

Q. Who were the persons that compos'd this Triumvirate?

A. The earl of *Oxford*, whose character has been already describ'd, and who was soon made lord high-treasurer; Sir *Simon Harcourt*, who was first made lord keeper, and afterwards lord high-chancellor, and a peer of the realm; and Mr. *Seymour*, who was made secretary of state, and afterwards viscount *Belinbrooke*.

Q. What was done with the duke of *Marlborough*?

A. As the new ministers were not yet well settled in their posts, or had not yet strongly rivetted themselves with *France*, they, for decency sake, suffer'd that illustrious warrior to enjoy the supreme command of the army for some time longer.

Q. What actions did he perform in 1712?

A. Prince *Bugene* being returned into *Germany* with the imperial and *Palatine* forces, in order to oppose the elector of *Bavaria's* designs, all that the duke of *Marlborough* could do, was to force the *French* lines, which

they

they thought impenetrable; and to take *Bouchain* in the sight of the enemy.

Q. What transactions happen'd in *Germany*?
 A. None that were remarkable; excepting that King *Charles III.* was peaceably elected and crown'd emperor in the room of his brother *Joseph*, who died of the small-pox the 11th of *April* 1711.

Q. Did his death occasion any change in the affairs of *Europe*?

A. The *English* ministers, who were resolv'd upon a peace, took advantage of it in order to accept of peace upon the conditions which *Monfieur Menager* offer'd in the name of the *French*; and as the duke of *Marlbrough* refus'd to enter into their measures, he was removed from all his employments; and the command of the army was bestow'd upon the duke of *Ormond*.

Q. What did this new general perform in 1712?

A. He blindly suffer'd himself to be govern'd by the ministers who had rais'd him; let slip a fine opportunity he had of defeating the *French*, and which prince *Eugene* would fain have improv'd; refus'd to assist that prince in forming the siege of *Landrecy*; separated from the allies, and drew off the *English* forces; and publish'd a truce with *France*, which not only occasion'd the defeat of the allies at *Denain*, but the raising of the siege of *Landrecy*, and the loss of *Douay*, *Bouchain*, and *Quefroy*.

Q. What memorable transactions happen'd in 1713?

A. Notwithstanding the strong remonstrances of the elector of *Hanover*, the pacific ministers of *Great-Britain* had already begun to negotiate publicly a peace with *France*, and had form'd a congress at *Utrecht*; where the powerful allies were oblig'd to send their plenipotentiaries. Those of *England* scarce acted as mediators; and *Lewis XIV.* and Queen *Anne*, having before-hand agreed upon the conditions of peace; they oblig'd the several princes who form'd the grand alliance to accept them, the emperor excepted, who was afterwards forced to make a separate treaty at *Baden*. Thus King *Philip* was left in quiet possession of the
Spanish

Spanish throne, and the victories and triumphs of the allies during this long series of war, which had cost immense sums, and so much blood, evaporated almost into smoke.

Q. Did Queen Anne long enjoy the peace she had procured?

A. Instead of calming all *Europe*, as was her intention, she drew upon herself numberless domestic troubles, which soon brought her to the grave.

Q. What was the occasion of those uneasinesses?

A. The persons who form'd the TRIUMVIRATE, who, as is usual with courtiers, had united themselves only out of different political views, and for the sake of their private interests; these finding they were all disappointed of their hopes, came at last to a rupture, which they carried to such a height, that, laying aside the respect they ow'd to a mistress who had distinguish'd them with the highest marks of her favour, they did not scruple to break out into the most bitter invectives, even in her presence. Her majesty, who was already weigh'd down by the burthen of her infirmities, was so deeply afflicted to find herself abused by those very ministers to whom she had yielded all her confidence, that being seiz'd with a kind of lethargy, she expir'd some days after, viz. on the 1st of Aug. 1714.

Q. Describe the qualities of Queen Anne?

A. To consider her private character, she was prudent, virtuous, charitable, and a perfect model of piety. As a sovereign, she was easy, kind, generous; but at the same time obstinate, jealous of the royal prerogatives, and would seem to have a hand in the several parts of the administration, tho' in fact she had but a very little share in them. As she appear'd to change her views with respect to politics, particularly with regard to the succession to the crown, she was alternately belov'd and despis'd both by the *Whigs* and the *Tories*.

F I N I S



